

THE

COMPLETE

MILITARY TUTOR:

CONTAINING

A SYSTEM OF MODERN TACTICS,

APPLICABLE TO

INFANTRY;

IN COMPANY, REGIMENT, OR LINE.

AS LAID DOWN

BY THE MOST APPROVED AUTHORS,

AND NOW IN PRACTICE

BY THE ARMIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

ILLUSTRATED BY SIXTEEN COPPERPLATES,

TOGETHER WITH

A VARIETY OF REPORTS.

The whole carefully Prepared for the Press, by Thomas Town.

PHILADELPHIA:

Published by the Editor, No. 113, North Second Street.

And For Sale,

At the Principal Book-stores, in Philadelphia, New-York, & Baltimore.

1809.

check

UD 157

.T 7

1809x

000000
JACOBSON
VT31002

acc 83-307

NOV 10 1967

NOT RECORDED

1967-1968

NOT RECORDED

J. F. Fennell
11/10/67

31501.

UD 157
T 66

TO THE HONORABLE

JOHN STEELE, ESQ.

LIEUTENANT COLONEL COMMANDANT

OF THE

PHILADELPHIA MILITIA LEGION.

AS A TESTIMONY OF ESTIMATION

FOR HIS

MILITARY SERVICES;

THIS VOLUME

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED,

BY HIS HUMBLE SERVANT,

THE EDITOR.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Safety of the Republic being so immediately connected with the organization and discipline of her Militia, and of such vast importance to its citizens, that should it be neglected, the Liberty of the people must eventually perish: it therefore becomes a duty incumbent on the citizen, in time of peace, to learn such tactics as may preserve for posterity that freedom, so nobly achieved by the illustrious Washington.

Viewing the great proficiency to which Military Tactics have been brought, on the continent of Europe, and the insufficiency of the ancient system, which is still adhered to by the Militia of the United States, the editor conceives there is just grounds to introduce a system of manœuvres; the principles of which, will be found simple and easy to the young officer, and most readily applied to large or small bodies of troops, being wholly connected, from the movements of a single Company to that of a considerable Line.

INTRODUCTION.

And as the greatest benefits must result from an uniformity of discipline being observed, the editor has adhered in this system to those tactics now in practice by the armies of the United States ; by the adoption of which, it will enable the Militia to act in unison, on the defensive or offensive state of the country.

CONTENTS.

The Recruit.....Without Arms.

Sect.	page.
1 Position of the Soldier,	19
2 Standing at Ease,	20
3 Turning of the Eyes,	<i>ib.</i>
4 The Facings,	21
5 Position in Marching,	22
6 Ordinary Step,	<i>ib.</i>
7 The Halt,	23
8 The Oblique Step,	<i>ib.</i>
9 Dressing when halted,	25
10 Stepping Out,	27
11 Marking Time,	<i>ib.</i>
12 Stepping Short,	<i>ib.</i>
13 Changing the Feet,	28
14 The Side or Closing Step,	<i>ib.</i>
15 The Back Step,	29
16 The Quick Step,	<i>ib.</i>
17 Quickest Step, or Wheeling time,	30
18 Of Measuring time in Marching,	31
19 File Marching,	32
20 Wheeling a single Rank, in Ordinary time from the Halt,	33
21 Wheeling of a single Rank from the March,	34
22 Wheeling Backwards a single Rank,	<i>ib.</i>
23 Wheeling a single Rank on a Moveable Pivot.	35

With Arms.

24 Position of the Soldier,	37
25 Attention in Forming the Squad,	38
26 Open Order,	39
27 Close Order,	<i>ib.</i>
28 The Manual Exercise,	<i>ib.</i>
31 Marching to the Front and Rear,	50
32 Open and Close Order on the March,	52
33 March in File to a Flank,	<i>ib.</i>
34 Wheeling in File	53
35 Oblique Marching in Front,	54
36 Oblique Marching in File,	55
37 Wheeling Forward from the Halt,	<i>ib.</i>

PART II.

The Platoon or Company.

Sec.	page.
38 Formation of the Company,	57
39 Platoon Exercise,	58
40 The Firings,	62
41 Movements of the Platoon,	63
42 Marching to the Front,	65
43 The Side Step,	66
44 The Back Step,	67
45 File Marching,	ib.
46 Wheeling from a Halt,	68
47 Wheeling Forward by Sub-divisions from Line	ib.
48 Wheeling backward by Sub-divisions from Line,	69
49 Marching on an Alignement, in open column of Sub-divisions,	70
50 Wheeling into line from open column of Sub-divisions,	71
51 Open column of Sub-divisions wheeling into an alignement,	72
52 Open column of Subdivisions wheeling into a new direction on a moveable Pivot,	74
53 Counter-march by Files,	75
54 Wheeling on the centre of the Platoon,	77
55 Increasing and Diminishing the front of an Open column Halted,	78
56 Increasing and Diminishing the front of an Open column on the March.	79
57 The Platoon in open column of Sub-divisions to pass a short defile, by breaking off Files,	81
58 Forming to the Front from File,	82
59 Forming from File to either Flank,	83
60 Form to either Flank, from Open column of Sub-divisions,	84
61 March in Echelon by sections to gain ground to a Flank,	85
62 From three Ranks form two ranks,	86
63 Form two ranks form three ranks.	87

PART III.

The Regiment.

FORMATION OF THE REGIMENT.	89
64 Regiment to take open order,	92
65 Regiment to resume close order,	94
GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES OF MOVEMENT,	95
74 Of Commands,	ib.
75 Distance of files,	97
76 Distance of ranks,	98
77 Depth of formation,	99

CONTENTS.

ix

Sec.	page.
78 Music and Drums,	100
79 Marching,	101
80 Wheeling,	102
81 Movements,	108
82 Points of March,	109
83 The alignement,	110
84 Points of formation,	111
85 Dressing,	114
OPEN COLUMN,	117
REGIMENT OPEN COLUMN,	119
ASSEMBLY, &c. OF THE REGIMENT,	128
36 Exercise of the Regiment,	129
REGIMENT STANDING IN OPEN COLUMN,	135
DIMINISH OR INCREASE THE FRONT OF COLUMN,	135
87 Diminish, } On the March,	{ 136
88 Increase, }	{ 137
89 Diminish, } When halted,	{ 138
90 Increase, }	{ 139
PASSAGE OF BRIDGE OR DEFILE FROM LINE,	140
91 To the front,	ib.
92 To the rear,	141
93 Marching off in column from one flank towards another,	143
94 MARCH OF THE REGIMENT IN FILE,	144
95 General formations from file	145
96 Formation in open column from file	146
COUNTER-MARCH BY FILES,	147
97 } Counter-march { from both flanks,	148
98 } { from centre,	149
99 Counter-march by divisions,	ib.
COUNTER-MARCH IN COLUMN,	151
100 Divisions by files,	ib.
101 The column by divisions from the rear,	153
102 By wings standing and changing ground,	154
103 By wings passing through each other.	155
GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION,	156
104 The several changes of position of a regiment.	159
105 The several entries on a new line in open column,	161
WHEEL AND MARCH FROM LINE INTO COLUMN, } AND FROM COLUMN INTO LINE.	} 166
106 } Wheel forward into line,	{ ib.
107 }	{ 167
118 } Wheel back into open column,	{ 168
109 }	{ 169

Sec.

page.

110	Wheel into column of sub-divisions,	169
111	March in prolongation of the line,	170
112 } 113 }	Changes of direction on a Moveable pivot,	171
114	Wheel on a halted pivot into an alignment,	<i>ib.</i>
115 } 116 } 117 }	Wheel of open column into an alignment,	{ 172 173 174
118	Halt, and wheel up of a column into line,	175
119	Wheel of sub-division column into line,	179

CHANGES OF POSITION IN OPEN COLUMN FROM LINE, 180

120 } 121 }	On a flank halted division { to the front, to the rear,	<i>ib.</i> 182
122	On a central division halted,	183
123	To a distant position, by filing divisions,	184
124	When the open column arrives where its head is to remain,	187
125	When the open column arrives where its rear is to remain,	188
126	When the open column arrives where a central division is to remain,	189
127	When the open column enters the new line by the echelon march,	190
128	When the divisions of the open column pass each other to form on the line.	191
129	When the open column forms in line by the evantail movement,	192

CHANGE OF POSITION OF THE OPEN COLUMN, 193

130 } 131 } 132 }	Change of position halted { on a front on a central } division,	{ <i>ib.</i> 194 <i>ib.</i>
133 } 134 } 135 }	Change to a distant position { In front In rear, To either flank,	195 <i>ib.</i> <i>ib.</i>
136	Formation to flank not the pivot one,	<i>ib.</i>

CLOSE COLUMN. 196

FORMATION OF CLOSE COLUMN FROM LINE. 198

137	Before or behind a flank company.	<i>ib.</i>
138	On a central company.	199
139	March of column to a flank.	200
140	March of column to the front.	201
141	The column halted, takes a new direction.	<i>ib.</i>
142	The column marching, changes direction.	202
143	Counter-march in close column.	<i>ib.</i>

DEPLOYMENT INTO LINE. 203

CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES DEPLOYS. 205

CONTENTS.

xi

Sec.		page.
144	On the front	205
145	On the rear	206
146	On the central	208
147	Column of companies, forms column of two companies.	209
	DEPLOYS.	210
148	On the front	<i>ib.</i>
149	On the rear	211
150	On a central	212
	OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENT.	213
151	} On an oblique line {	<i>ib.</i>
152		214
153	Formation of the line in the prolongation of the flank of the column, and on any division.	215
	ECHELLON.	<i>ib.</i>
	CHANGES OF POSITION BY COMPANY ECHELLONS.	219
154	Wheel of regiment in echellon.	220
155	March and halt into echellon.	222
156	Wheel back into parallel line.	223
157	March up into oblique line.	224
158	Formation in line from open column by the echellon march.	225
159	{ The regiment { forward } on a flank	227
160		229
161	Change of position, on a central company.	230
162	Change of position on a distant point.	232
163	March of direct echellon to the front and formation in line.	233
	ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUB-DIVISIONS.	234
164	If the regiment is halted.	235
165	If the regiment is marching in line.	237
	MARCH OF THE REGIMENT IN LINE.	239
166	When the regiment advances.	241
167	When the regiment dresses.	246
168	When the regiment retires	248
169	Changes of direction when in movement.	250
	PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE.	253
170	When the front of obstacles is considerable.	254
171	When the obstacle increases.	255
172	When the obstacle is passed, diminishes.	256
173	When the regiment fires in passing.	257
174	Passing the obstacle by files.	258
175	{ Passing a wood by companies filing.	<i>ib.</i>
		<i>ib.</i>
176	Retiring by alternate companies.	262
177	Advancing or retiring by battalions and firing.	<i>ib.</i>

Sec.	page.
178 When the regiment forms a square or oblong.	263
March by a face.	265
March by an angle.	<i>ib.</i>
Oblong formed from open column of march.	266
March in open ground, prepared against cavalry.	267

Inspection or review.	270
Light Infantry,	285

PART IV.

THE LINE.

MOVEMENTS OF A LINE.	294
OPEN COLUMN OF THE LINE.	299
GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE.	301
179 Taking up lines of march and formation.	305
180 Open column, enters, marches, forms on an alignement.	307
181 Formation in line, on detached adjutants from column, or assembly in mass of regiments.	313
182 Entry and formation of the rear regiments of a column, on an alignement, when the head ones have halted on it.	319
183 } Change of position, { On a fixed flank division.	320
184 } { On a fixed central division.	<i>ib.</i>
185 } { On a moving central division.	321
186 Change of position, by the <i>vourff</i> or quick movement.	323
CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE.	326
187 From column of march, to form close column, and line.	327
188 Oblique deployments.	330
189 When regiment close column forms square.	331
190 Several close columns, formed from the same line.	333
191 Several close columns form in one line.	<i>ib.</i>
192 Two columns exchange places.	334
193 Two columns form in one line,	335
194 Two columns form in two lines.	<i>ib.</i>
ECHELLON MOVEMENTS OF THE LINE.	336
195 Oblique position taken by the echellon march.	337
196 When from an advance in echellon, the line changes position inwards.	338
197 When echellons advance direct from flank of line to the front.	339
198 When a line formed on enemy's flank, attacks in echellon.	340

CONTENTS.

xiii

Sec.		page.
199	When a line formed oblique to an enemy attacks from a flank.	341
200	{ Echellons taken form { Parallel } { Oblique } Position. { Column }	343
	Change of leading flank during echellon movement.	344
	MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT.	346
201	Advance in line.	<i>ib.</i>
202	Halt, and dressing of the line.	349
203	Retire in line.	350
204	When a line passes a bridge, or defile.	353
205	When a line advances or retires by battalions.	354
206	Firing in line.	<i>ib.</i>
207	Square or oblong of several regiments.	356
	CHEQUERED RETREAT OF THE LINE.	358
	Oblique position taken.	360
	Retreat of two line.	362
	PASSAGE OF LINES.	363
	When the second line advances to relieve the first.	<i>ib.</i>
	When the second line remains posted.	364
	When a height is to be crowned.	365
	When a wing is thrown back.	<i>ib.</i>
	When a wing is refused.	<i>ib.</i>
	SECOND LINES.	366
208	Two lines change position on a central point of the first	368
209	{ Two lines change { forward } on a flank }	370
210	{ position { backward } on the first. }	<i>ib.</i>
211	{ Two lines in march { forward { by an altera- change to a flank { backward { tion of their position { direction. }	371 372
	COLUMN OF ROUTE.	373

MILITARY TUTOR.

DIRECTIONS FOR THE BINDER.

To be bound in one volume, in the following order.

Title Page and Dedication.

Introduction.

Contents.

Parts....First, Second and Third..

Inspection or Review.

Light Infantry.

Part.....Fourth.

The Plates in order from one to sixteen.

Reports at the end.

THE
COMPLETE
MILITARY TUTOR.

PART FIRST.

OF THE DRILL,

Or Instruction of the Recruit.

THE several heads of instruction for recruits should be attended to, and followed, in the manner and order here set forth. It requires in the instructors to whom this duty is intrusted, and who are to be answerable for the execution of it, the most unremitting perseverance, and accurate knowledge of the part each has to teach, and a clear and concise manner of conveying his instructions; but with a firmness that will command from men a perfect attention to the directions he is giving them.....He must allow for the weak capacity of the recruit; be patient, not rigorous, where endeavour and goodwill are evidently not wanting: quickness is not at first to be required, it is the result of much practice. If officers and instructors are not critically exact in their own commands, and in observing the execution of what is required from others, slovenliness must take place, labour be ineffectual, and the end proposed will never be attained.

The recruit must be carried on progressively; he should comprehend one thing before he proceeds to another.....In the first circumstances of position, firelock, fingers, elbows, &c. are to be justly placed by the instructor; when recruits are more advanc-

ed, they should not be touched ; but from the example shown, and the directions prescribed, be taught to correct themselves when so admonished. Recruits should not be kept too long at any particular part of their exercise, so as to fatigue or make them uneasy ; and marching without arms should be much intermixed with the firelock instruction,fife, or music, should on no account be used ; but the recruit is to be confirmed by habit alone in that cadence of step which he is afterwards to maintain in his march to the enemy, in spite of every variety of noise and circumstance, that may tend to derange him.

In the manner hereafter prescribed, should each recruit be trained singly, and in squad ; nor until he is steadied in these, and in other points of his duty, is he to be allowed to join the battalion ; for one awkward man, imperfect in his march, or whose person is distorted, will derange his division, and of course operate on the battalion and line, in a still more consequential manner.....Every soldier on his return from long absence, should be redrilled before he is permitted to act in the ranks of his company.

Remarks upon the necessity, utility, or application, of what is hereafter prescribed, are as much as possible avoided in the first and second parts : such remarks properly belong to the third, or battalion part, with the principles of whose movements it must be supposed an instructor is sufficiently acquainted,

WITHOUT ARMS.

§ 1. *Position of the Soldier.*

THE equal squareness of the shoulders and body to the front is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier.....The heels must be in a line, and nearly closed.....The knees straight, without stiffness.....The toes a little turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of about 45 degrees.....Let the arms hang near the body, but not stiff, the flat part of the hand and little finger touching the thigh; the thumbs as far back as the seems of the pantaloons;....The elbows and shoulders to be kept back; the belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced, but without constraint; the body upright, but inclining forward, so that the weight of it principally bears on the fore part of the feet;....the head to be erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

The position in which a soldier should move, determines that in which he should stand still.... Too many methods cannot be used to supple the recruit, and banish the air of the rustic.....But that excess of setting up, which stiffens the person, and tends to throw the body backward instead of forward, is contrary to every true principle of movement, and must therefore be most carefully avoided.

N. B.....The words of command on the margin printed in small capitals, are of the battalion or field officer.....Those in italicks, are of the instructors and leaders of divisions.

§ 2.....*Standing at Ease.*

Stand at Ease. { On the word *Stand at Ease*, the right foot is to be drawn back about six inches, and the greatest part of the weight of the body brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the hands brought together before the body; but the shoulders to be kept back, and square; the head to the front, and the whole attitude without constraint.

Attention. { On the word *Attention*, the hands are to fall smartly down the outside of the thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line with the left; and the proper unconstrained position of a soldier immediately resumed.

When standing at ease for any considerable time in cold weather, the men may be permitted to move their limbs; but without quitting their ground, so that upon the word *Attention*, no one shall have materially lost his dressing in the line.

§ 3.....*Eyes to the Right, &c.*

Eyes Right. { On the words, *Eyes Right*, glance the eyes to right, with the slightest turn possible of the head. At the words, *Eyes Left*, cast the eyes in like manner to the left. On the words, *Eyes Front*, the look, and head, are to be directly to the front, the habitual position of the soldier.

These motions are only useful on the wheeling of divisions, or when dressing is ordered after a halt; and particular attention must be paid in the several turnings of the eyes, to prevent the soldier from moving his body, which should be preserved perfectly square to the front.

§ 4.....*The Facings.*

In going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground; the body must rather incline forward, and the knees be kept straight.

To the Right-face. { 1st. Place the hollow of the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2d. Raise the toes, and turn to the right on both heels.

To the Left-face. { 1st. Place the right heel against the hollow of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2d. Raise the toes, and turn to the left upon both heels.

To the Right about-face { 1st. Place the ball of the right toe against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2d. Raise the toes, and turn to the right about on both heels.

3d. Bring the right foot smartly back in a line with the left.

To the Left about-face. { 1st. Place the right heel against the ball of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2d. Raise the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels.

3d. Bring up the right smartly in a line with the left.

The greatest precision must be observed in these facings, for if they are not exactly executed, a body of men, after being properly dressed, will lose their dressing, on every small movement of facing.

§ 5....*Position in Marching.*

March.

In marching the soldier must maintain, as much as possible, the position of the body as directed in § 1. He must be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands, without stiffness, must be kept steady by his sides, and not suffered to vibrate. He must not be allowed to stoop forward, still less to lean back. His body must be kept square to the front, and thrown rather more forward in marching than when halted, that it may accompany the movement of the leg and thigh, which movement must spring from the haunch. The ham must be stretched, but without stiffening the knee. The toe a little pointed, and kept near the ground, so that the shoe-soles may not be visible to a person in front. The head to be kept well up, straight to the front, and the eyes not suffered to be cast down. The foot, without being drawn back, must be placed flat on the ground.

§ 6....*Ordinary Step.*

The length of each pace, from heel to heel, is 30 inches, and the recruit must be taught to take 75 of these steps in a minute, without tottering, and with perfect steadiness.

The *ordinary* step being the pace on all occasions whatever, unless greater celerity be particularly ordered, the recruit must be carefully trained, and thoroughly instructed in this most essential part of his duty, and perfectly made to understand, that he is to maintain it for a long period of time together, both in line and in column, and in rough as well as smooth ground, which he may be required to march over. This is the slowest step which a recruit is taught, and is also applied in all movements of parade.

§ 7.....*The Halt.*

Halt. { On the word *Halt*, let the rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced one, so as to finish the step which was taking when the command was given.

N.B. The words *Halt, wheel—Halt, front—Halt, dress*—are each to be considered as one word of command, and no pause made betwixt the parts of their execution.

§ 8.....*The Oblique Step.*

*To the Left
Oblique....March.*

When the recruit has acquired the regular length and cadence of the ordinary pace, he is to be taught the oblique step. At the words, *To the Left, Oblique....March*, without altering his personal squareness of position, he will, when he is to step with his left foot, point, and

Plate I....Fig. 1.

carry it forward 19 inches in the diagonal line, to the left, which gives about 13 inches to the side, and about 13 inches to the front. On the word *Two*, he will bring his right foot 30 inches forward, so that the right heel be placed 13 inches directly before the left one. In this position he will pause, and on the word *Two*, continue to march, as before directed, by advancing his left foot 19 inches, pausing at each step till confirmed in his position; it being essentially necessary to take the greatest care that his shoulders be preserved square to the front. From the combination of these two movements, the general obliquity gained will amount to an angle of about 25 degrees. When the recruit is habituated to the lengths and directions of the step, he must be made to continue the march, without pausing, with firmness, and in the cadence of the ordinary pace, viz. 75 steps in the minute.

As all marching (the side-step excepted) invariably begins with the left foot, whether the obliquing commences from the halt, or on the march, the first diagonal step taken, is by the leading foot of the side inclined to, when it comes to its turn, after the command is pronounced.

The squareness of the person, and the habitual cadenced step, in consequence, are the great directions of the oblique, as well as of the direct, march.

Each recruit should be separately and carefully instructed in the principles of the foregoing eight sections of the drill. They form the basis of all military movements.

§ 9.....*Of Dressing when halted.*

Six or eight recruits will now be formed in one rank, at very open files, and instructed as follows.

Dress. { Dressing is to be taught equally by the left as by the right. On the word *Dress*, each individual will cast his eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dress, with the smallest turn possible of the head, but preserving the shoulders and body square to their front. The whole person of the man must move as may be necessary, and bending backward or forward is not to be permitted. He must take short quick steps, thereby gradually and exactly to gain his position, and on no account be suffered to attempt it by any sudden or violent alteration, which must infallibly derange whatever is beyond him. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, is the true line of dressing. Each man should be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

In dressing, the eyes of the men are always turned to the officer, who gives the word *Dress*; and who is posted at the point by which the body halts; and who from that point corrects his men, on a point at, or beyond his opposite flank.

The faults to be avoided, and generally committed by the soldier in dressing, are, passing the line; the head too forward, and body kept back; the shoulders not square; the head turned too much.

Two, or more men, being moved forward, or backward, a given number of paces, and placed in the new line, and direction, the following commands will be given.

By the *Right, forward....Dress.*

By the *Right, backward....Dress.*

By the *Left, forward....Dress.*

By the *Left, backward....Dress.*

Eyes Front. { As soon as the dressing is accomplished, the words *Eyes Front*, will be given, that heads may be replaced, and remain square to the front.

No rank, or body, ought ever to be dressed, without the person on its flank appointed to dress it, determining, or at least supposing a line, on which the rank, or body, is to be formed, and for that purpose taking as his object the distant flank man, or a point beyond such flank, or a man thrown out on purpose;...dressing must then be made gradually, and progressively, from the fixed point, towards the distant flank one; and each man successively, but quickly, must be brought up into the true line, so as to become a new point, from whence the person directing proceeds in the correction of the others; and he himself, when so directing, must take care that his person, or his eyes at least, be in the true line, which he is then giving.

§ 10.....*Stepping Out.*

Step Out. { The squad marches as already directed in ordinary time. On the words *Step Out*, the recruit must be taught to lengthen his step to 33 inches, by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is necessary when a temporary exertion in line, and to the front, is required; and is applied both to ordinary and quick time.

§ 11.....*Marking Time.*

Mark Time. { On the words *Mark Time*, the foot then advancing completes its pace; after which the cadence is continued, without gaining any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot, and bringing it back square with the other.

Forward. { At the word *Forward*, the ordinary pace of 30 inches will be taken.

This step is necessary marching in the line, when any particular battalion is advanced, and has to wait for the coming up of others.

§ 12.....*Stepping Short.*

Step Short. { On the word, *Step Short*, the foot advancing will finish its pace, and afterwards each recruit will step as far as the ball of his toe, and no farther,

Forward. { until the word *Forward*, be given, when the usual step of 30 inches is to be taken.

This step is used when a momentary retardment of either a battallion in line, or of a division in column, shall be required.

§ 13.....*Of Changing the Feet.*

Change Feet. { To change the feet in marching, the advancing foot completes its pace, the ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which instantly makes another step forward, so that the cadence may not be lost.

This may be required of an individual, who is stepping with a different foot from the rest of his division; in doing which he will in fact take two successive steps with the same foot.

§ 14.....*The Side or Closing Step.*

The side or closing step is performed from the halt in ordinary time, by the following commands.

Close to the Right.....March.

Close to the Left....March.

Close to the Right, March. { In closing to the right, on the word *March*, eyes are turned to the right, and each man carries his right foot about 12 inches directly to his right, (or if the files are closed, to his neighbour's left foot,) and instantly brings up his left foot, till the heel touches his right heel; he then pauses, so as to perform this movement in ordinary time, and proceeds to take the next step in the same manner; the whole with perfect precision of time, shoulders kept square, knees not bent, and in the true line on which the body is formed.—At the word *Halt*, the whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are perfectly steady.

Halt.

§ 15.....*The Back Step.*

Step back,
March. { The *Back Step* is performed in the ordinary time and length of pace, from the halt, on command *Step Back*,....
Halt. { *March*.....The recruit must be taught to move straight to the rear, preserving his shoulders square to the front, and his body erect.....On the word *Halt*, the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

A few paces only of the back step can be necessary at a time.

§ 16....*The Quick Step.*

Quick,
March { The cadence of the ordinary pace having become perfectly habitual to the recruits, they are now to be taught to march a quick time, which is 108 steps in the minute, each 30 inches, making 270 feet in a minute.... The command *Quick, March*, being given with a pause between them; the word *Quick*, is to be considered as a caution, and the whole to remain perfectly steady; on the word *March*, they step off with the left feet, keeping the body in the same posture, and the shoulders square to the front; the foot to be lifted off the ground, that it may clear any stones, or other impediments in the way, and to be thrown forward, and placed firm; the whole of the sole to touch the ground, and not the heel alone; the knees are not to be bent, neither are they to be stiffened, so as to occasion fatigue, or constraint.....The arms to hang with ease down the outside of the thigh; a very small motion to prevent constraint may be permitted; but not to swing out, and thereby occasion the least turn, or movement of the shoulder; the head is to be kept to the front, the body well up, and the utmost steadiness preserved.

This is the pace to be used in all *filings* of divisions from line into column, or from column into line ; and by battalion columns of manœuvre, when independantly changing position.....It may occasionally be used in the column of march of small bodies, when the rout is smooth, and no obstacles occur ; but in the march in line of a considerable body it is not to be required, and very seldom in a column of manœuvre ; otherwise fatigue must arise to the soldier, and more time will be lost by hurry and inaccuracy, than is attempted to be gained by quickness.

The word *March*, given singly, at all times denotes that *ordinary* time is to be taken ; when the *quick march* is meant, that word will precede the other.....The word *March*, marks the beginning of movements from the *halt* ; but is not given when the body is in previous motion.

§ 17.....*The Quickest Step.*

The *quickest time*, or *wheeling march*, is 120 steps of 30 inches each, or 300 feet in a minute.....The directions already given for the march in quick time relate equally to the march in quickest time.

This step is applied chiefly to the purpose of wheeling, and is the rate at which all bodies should accomplish their *wheels*, the outward file stepping 33 inches, whether the wheel is from line into column, during the march in column, or from column into line.....In this *time* also should divisions double, and move up, when passing obstacles in line ; or when in the column of march, the front of divisions is increased, or diminished.

Three or four recruits in one rank, with intervals of 12 inches between them, should be practised in the different steps, that they may acquire a firmness and independence of movement.

§ 18.....*Of Measuring Time, in Marching.*

Many different times of March should not be required of the soldier.....The following should suffice.

<i>Ordinary Time</i>	75 steps in the minute.
<i>Quick Time</i>	108.....
<i>Wheeling, or Quickest Time</i> ..	120.....

PLUMMETS, which vibrate the required times of march in a minute, are of great utility, and can alone prevent or correct uncertainty of movement; they should be in the possession of, and constantly referred to, by each instructor of a squad,....the several lengths of plummet, swinging the times of the different marches in a minute, should be as follows:

<i>For Ordinary Time</i>	24 In. 96 Hund.
..... <i>Quick Time</i>	12.....3.....
..... <i>Quickest, or Wheeling Time</i>	9.....80.....

A musket ball suspended by a string which is not subject to stretch, and on which are marked the different required lengths, will answer every purpose. The length of the Plummet is to be measured from the point of suspension to the centre of the ball.

Accurate distances of steps should also be marked out on the ground, along which the soldier should be practised to march, and thereby acquire the just length of pace.

Strong taps of the Drum in just time with the plummet, are useful to imprint the required measure on the recruit.....but should not be suffered during the march.

§ 19.....*File Marching.*

Six or eight recruits should now be formed in a rank, at close files, having a steady, well drilled soldier on their flank to lead,....and be taught **FILE MARCHING.**

*To the.....
Face.*

The recruits must first *face*, and then be instructed to cover each other exactly in file, so that the head of the man immediately before, may conceal the heads of all the others in his front....The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary in marching by files, which is first to be taught at the *ordinary time*, and afterwards in *quick time*.

March.

On the word *March*, the whole are immediately to step off together, gaining at the very first step 30 inches, and so continuing each step without increasing the distance betwixt each recruit, every man locking or placing his advanced foot on the ground, before the spot from whence the preceding man had taken up his,....no looking down, nor leaning backward should be suffered, on any pretence whatever,....the leader is to be directed to march straight forward to some distant object given him for that purpose, and the recruits made to cover one another during the march, with the greatest exactness,....great attention must be paid to prevent them from marching with their knees bent, which they will be very apt to do at first, from an apprehension of treading upon the heels of those before them.

§ 20....*Wheeling of a single Rank, in Ordinary time from the Halt.*

<p><i>Right Wheel, March.</i></p>	<p>At the word, <i>To the Right Wheel</i>, the man on the right of the rank faces to the right; on the word <i>March</i>, they step off together, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling flank,) except the man on the left of the rank, who looks inwards; and, during the wheel, becomes a kind of base line for the others to conform to, and maintain the uniformity of front....The outward wheeling man always lengthens his step to 33 inches,...the whole observe the same time, but each man shortening his step in proportion as he is nearer to the standing flank on which the wheel is made,...during the wheel, the whole remain closed to the standing flank; that is, they touch, without incommoding their neighbour; nor must they stoop forward, but remain upright, opening out from the standing flank is to be avoided; closing in upon it, during the wheel, is to be resisted.....On the word <i>Halt, Dress</i>, each man halts immediately without jumping forward, or making any false movements.</p>
<p><i>Halt, Dress.</i></p>	

When the recruits are able to perform the wheel with accuracy in the *ordinary time*, they should be practised in wheeling in *quickest time*.

Nothing will tend sooner to enable the recruit to acquire the proper length of step, according to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for several revolutions of the circle.—And also giving the word *Halt, Dress*, at instants not expected, and when only a 6th, 8th, or any smaller proportion of the circle is completed.

§ 21....*Wheeling of a single Rank, from the March.*

<p><i>Halt,</i> <i>Right</i> <i>Wheel.</i></p>	<p><i>Halt,</i> <i>Dress.</i></p>	<p><i>March.</i></p>	<p>The recruits should first be taught to perform this wheeling at the <i>ordinary time</i>, and afterwards in the <i>quickest, or proper wheeling time</i>,...the rank marching to the front at the ordinary time, receives the word of command, <i>Halt, Right Wheel</i>, the man on the right of the rank instantly halts, and faces to his right; the rest of the rank, turning their eyes to the wheeling flank (as directed in the preceding section,) immediately change the step together to <i>wheeling time</i>; as soon as the portion of the circle to be wheeled is completed, the words <i>Halt, Dress</i>, will be given (a pause of two or three seconds may be made,) and then <i>March</i>, on which the whole rank steps off together at the ordinary time.</p>
--	---------------------------------------	----------------------	--

§ 22.....*Wheeling Backwards, a single Rank.*

<p><i>On the Right</i> <i>backwards,</i> <i>Wheel.</i> <i>March.</i></p>	<p><i>Halt.</i></p>	<p>At the word <i>On the Right backwards, Wheel</i>, the man on the right of the rank, faces to his left; at the word <i>March</i>, the whole step backward in wheeling time, dressing by the outward wheeling man, those nearest the pivot man making their steps extremely small, and those towards the wheeling man encreasing them as they are placed nearer to him.... The recruit in this wheel must not bend forward, nor be suffered to look down; but by casting his eyes to the wheeling flank, preserve the dressing of the rank..... On the word <i>Halt</i>, the whole remain perfectly steady, still looking to the wheeling flank till they receive the word <i>Right Dress</i>.</p>
--	---------------------	---

The recruits should be first practised to wheel backwards at the ordinary step; and at all times it will be necessary to prevent them from hurrying the pace; an error soldiers are very liable to fall into, particularly in wheeling backwards....Where large bodies wheel from line into column, this wheeling is necessary to preserve the covering of pivot flanks, and the distances of the divisions, which the line is to break into.

§ 23.....*Wheeling a single Rank on a moveable Pivot.*

In wheeling on a moveable pivot, both flanks are movable, and describe concentric circles round a point which is removed a few paces from what would otherwise be the standing flank; and eyes are all turned towards the directing pivot man, whether he is on the outward flank, or on the flank wheeled to.

<i>Right Shoulders forward.</i>	{	When the wheel is to be made to the directing pivot flank (suppose the left,)the rank marching at the ordinary pace, receives the word, <i>Right Shoulders forward</i> ; on which the pivot man, without altering either the time or length of his pace, continues his march on the circumference of the lesser circle, and tracing out a considerable arch, on the principle of dressing, gradually brings round his rank to the direction required, without obliging the other flank, which is describing the circumference of a larger circle to too great hurry;....on the word <i>Ordinary</i> , shoulders are squared, and the pivot marches direct to his front.
<i>Ordinary.</i>	{	

*Left
Shoulders
forward.*

When the directing pivot is on the outward flank, and has to describe the circumference of the larger circle, on the word *Left Shoulders, forward*, he will, without changing the time, or length of his pace, gradually bring round the rank to the required direction, so as to enable the inward flank to describe a similar arc of a lesser circle, concentric to the one he himself is moving on.During both these wheels, the rank dresses to the proper pivot, and when he describes the smaller circle of the wheel, the other flank which has more ground to go over, will quicken its march, and step out.When the pivot describes the greater circle of the wheel, the other flank which has less ground to go over, will step shorter, and gradually conform.In the first case, the recruit must be cautioned against opening out from the pivot; and, in the latter, from crowding on him.

The just performance of this mode of wheeling depends so much on the directing pivot, that a well drilled soldier should, at first, be placed on the flank named, as the proper pivot, and changed occasionally.It is used, when a column of march (in order to follow the windings of its route,) changes its direction in general, less than the quarter circle.

WITH ARMS.

§ 24.....*Position of the Soldier.*

When the firelock is given, and shouldered, the person of the soldier remains in the position described, (§ 1.) except, that the wrist of the left hand is turned out, the better to embrace the butt, the thumb alone is to appear in front, the four fingers to be under the butt, the left elbow is a little bent inwards, without being separated from the body, or being more backward or forward than the right one.The firelock should be placed in the hand, not on the middle of the fingers, and carried in such manner that it shall not raise, advance, or keep back one shoulder more than the other; the butt must therefore be forward, and as low as can be permitted without constraint; the fore part nearly even with that of the thigh, and the hind part of it pressed by the wrist against the thigh; the piece must be kept steady and firm before the hollow of the shoulder; should the firelock be drawn back or attempted to be carried high, in that case, one shoulder will be advanced, the other kept back, and the upper part of the body distorted, and not placed square with respect to the limbs.

Each recruit should be separately taught the position of shouldered arms, before he proceeds further. He should also be accustomed to *carry* his arms for a considerable time together; it is most essential he should do so, and not be allowed to *support* them so often as is practised, under the idea of that long *carrying* them is a position of too much constraint.

A platoon, company, or battalion, should never MARCH, OR HALT, OR FORM IN LINE, OR DRESS, (which are situations where the greatest accuracy of front is required,) but with *carried arms*....When such bodies are standing and halted, arms may be occasionally *supported*....When marching in column, or small divisions are moving in file, arms may also be *supported*.

§ 25. *Attention in forming the Squad.*

When a SQUAD or division (of from 12 to 15 files) is ordered to *fall in*, each man, with carried arms, will immediately take his place in the ranks, beginning from the flank, to which he is ordered to form; he will dress himself in line by the rule already given; assume the ordered position of a soldier, and stand perfectly still, and steady, until ordered to stand at ease, or that some other command be given him....The Squad should be sized in single rank, after which they may be formed three deep, by being told off from the right; *Front, Centre, Rear*; at the word *Double*, the front rank steps to the left in front; the rear rank, steps to the right in the rear; the centre stands fast....If the small men are wanted in the centre, each rank may be *doubled* and countermarched....Attention must be paid, that the files are correctly closed; that the men in the rear ranks cover well, looking their file leaders in the middle of the neck;....That the ranks have their proper distance of one pace (30 inches) from each other;....That all the ranks are equally well dressed;....That the men do not turn their heads to the right, or left; and that each man has the proper unconstrained attitude of a soldier.

§ 26.....*Open Order.*

Rear Ranks { The recruits being formed in three
take { ranks at close order, on the word
Open Order. { *Rear Ranks take Open Order*, the
flank men on the right and left of the
centre, and rear ranks, step briskly
back one and two paces respectively,
face to their right, and stand covered,
to mark the ground on which rank is
to halt, and dress at open order; every
other individual remains ready to
move....On the word *March* the dress-
March. { ers front, and the centre and rear
ranks fall back one and two paces,
each dressing by the right the instant
it arrives on the ground.

§ 27.....*Close Order.*

Rear Ranks { On the word *Rear Rank take Close*
take { *Order*, the whole remain perfectly
Close Order. { steady; at the word *March*, the ranks
close within one pace, marching one
March. { and two paces and then halting.

§ 28.....*Of The Manual Exercise.*

The Squad should now go through the Manual Exercise, as laid down; the recruit should not be hurried, but time and attention paid to perfect every motion; the instructor should be completely master of all the motions of the Manual, in order to teach by example the recruit, thereby to avoid false motions that are often taken up.

THE MANUAL.

I.

Attention. { (See § 2d.) The right hand will be brought down briskly on the sling, the body square to the front, the head well up, and the attitude of the soldier assumed.

II.

Shoulder Arms. { 1st. Shift the thumb behind the barrel, and throw the piece up into the proper shouldered position. (See § 24.)
2d. Bring down the right hand briskly by the right side.

III.

Poise Arms. { 1st. Turn the piece with a quick motion of the left wrist, the lock to the front; at the same instant bring the right hand across the body seizing the piece at the small.
2d. Bring up the piece with the right hand, quitting the butt with the left, holding it perpendicularly before the left eye, lock out, and strike the sling smartly with the left hand half way between the guard and the tail-pipe, the upper part of the hand as high as the eyes, and the flat of the butt nearly touching the breast.

IV.

Cock Firelock. { 1st. Turn the barrel briskly opposite the left eye, the cock-pin opposite the left breast, place the thumb of the right hand on the cock, the fingers below the guard to assist the purchase of the thumb, and raise the elbow a little.
2d. Cock the piece, bringing down the elbow close by the side.

VI.

Take Aim.

{ Step back with the right foot about six inches, the toe pointed to the right, the left toe pointed to the front, bringing down the piece at the same time to a level, the butt placed firm against the hollow of the right shoulder, the fore-finger before the trigger, the right cheek touching the flat of the butt, and with the right eye taking a view along the barrel at the object intended to be fired at.

VII.

Fire.

{ Draw the trigger smartly, and immediately after firing bring up the right foot square with the left, toe pointed to the right, and the piece down, the butt opposite the short rib, the muzzle as high as the chin, the left hand having the same hold that was fired in, thumb along the stock, and with the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand, the back up, seize the cock, raising the elbow a little : the head must be kept well up and the body straight.

VIII.

*Half-cock
Firelock.*

{ Raise the cock to the half-cock briskly, bringing down the elbow on the butt.

IX.

*Handle
Cartridge.*

{ Bring down the right hand quick on the cartridge-box, seize the first cartridge the hand comes to, between the fore-finger and thumb, bring up the hand with it to the mouth, bite off the paper down to the powder, covering it with the thumb, keep the elbow down and the hand as high as the chin.

Prime.

{ Shake a little of the powder into the pan, press the paper of the open end of the cartridge together with the forefinger and thumb, place the other three fingers behind the steel of the lock, with the elbow a little raised.

X.

Shut Pan.

{ 1st. Shut the pan, briskly bringing the steel down on the powder, and the elbow down on the butt, preserving the hold of the cartridge between the finger and thumb.

{ 2d. Throw the piece smartly across the body to the loading position, the butt in a line with the toes and suspended with the left hand about three inches off the ground, with the lock to the front, the muzzle a little turned out from the body, the heel of the right hand touching the barrel about three inches below the muzzle.

XI.

Load with Cartridge.

{ 1st. Turn the open end of the cartridge into the muzzle, shaking the powder in the barrel, and force in the wad (or ball), dropping the butt to the ground, which will settle the powder at the breech.

{ 2d. Turn the rammer towards the left breast, seize the butt of the rammer with the right hand, thumb upwards, and keep the elbow down.

XII.

Draw Rammer.

{ 1st. Pull the rammer half out and seize it back-handed at the muzzle.

{ 2d. Draw it out, turn it, and enter it about half way into the muzzle.

XIII.

*Ram down
Cartridge.*

{ Force the cartridge down, and with two smart strokes of the rammer, feel that it is well down to the breech; draw the rammer half out, seize it back-handed by the middle, turn it in the bell-pipe, running it down as far as the tail-pipe, with the edge of the hand on the butt of the rammer, and the fingers extended.

XIV.

*Return
Rammer.*

{ Force the rammer home, and instantly raise the left hand with the piece to the proper shouldered position, keeping the left hand at the swell, seizing the piece at the small with the right hand, and turning the body square to the front.

XV.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

{ 1st. Bring down the left hand smartly on the butt, taking the usual hold of it.
2d. Quit the small with the right hand, and drop it to its first position.

XVI.

Order Arms.

{ 1st. Bring up the right hand, and seize the piece opposite the hollow of the left shoulder.
2d. Bring down the piece to the right side, the butt about two inches off the ground.
3d. Drop the butt on the ground, placing the muzzle against the hollow of the right shoulder, the hand flat down upon the sling.

XVII.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

{ Come up to the shoulder, agreeably to art. II. of the Manual.

XVIII.

*Support
Arms.*

1st. Bring the right hand smartly across the body, seizing the piece at the small.

2d. Quit the butt with the left, throwing the lower part of the arm horizontally across the body, letting the cock rest upon the swell of the arm.

3d. Quit the small with the right hand, and bring it to its first position.

XIX.

Carry Arms.

1st. Bring the right hand smartly across the body, seizing the piece at the small.

2d. Bring down the left strong on the butt, seizing it with the usual hold.

3d. Bring the right hand to its first position.

XX.

*Secure
Arms.*

1st. Bring the right hand briskly across the body, seizing the piece at the small.

2d. Quit the butt with the left hand, and seize it at the swell.

3d. Quit the piece with the right bringing it down to its first position with the left hand bring down the muzzle smartly within 12 inches of the ground, the butt close up under the arm-pit, and the swell of the arm covering the lock.

XXI.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Bring the piece smartly to the shoulder with the left hand, stop and steady it at the small with the right.

2d. Bring down the left strong upon the butt.

3d. Drop the right hand to its first position.

XXII.

1st. & 2d. The same as the two first motions of the secure.

*Fix
Bayonet.*

3d. Quit the piece with the right hand, lowering it down the left side to the ground, two inches from the left toe, throw the muzzle into the guard of the right arm, and with the right hand sieze the bayonet, and with the left seize the sheath, draw and fix the bayonet with the utmost celerity, bring the piece into the left shoulder.

XXIII.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Quit the socket of the bayonet with the right hand, raise the peice up to the shouldered position with the left, keeping the hand at the swell, and seizing the small with the right.

2d. Bring the left hand smartly down on the butt.

3d. Drop the right hand to its first position.

XXIV.

Port Arms.

Throw the piece, at one motion, across the body, to a low diagonal recover; in which the lock is turned to the front, at the height of the breast, the muzzle standing upwards, so that the barrel crosses opposite the left shoulder, the butt proportionably depressed; the right hand grasping the small, the left holding the piece at the swell, near the lower pipe, the thumbs pointing towards the muzzle.

XXV.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Bring the piece to the shoulder and seize the butt with the usual hold.

2d. Quit the piece with the right hand and bring it to the first position.

XXVI.

*Charge
Bayonet.*

1st. Bring the right hand swiftly across the body, taking a strong hold of the small of the piece, throwing it forward.

2d. Bring down the piece with the right hand smartly upon the left, just below the tail-pipe, at the same time making a quarter face; feel the front of the hip bone, and bring the piece to a horizontal position.

The 2d and 3d rank comes to the preparative, or port arms.

XXVII.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Throw the piece smartly to a shoulder, seize the butt with the left hand.

2d. Bring down the right hand to the first position.

XXVIII.

*Present
Arms.*

1st. and 2d, the same as the two first motions of the poise.

3d. Draw the right foot back opposite the heel about six inches; at the same instant, bring down the piece before the left knee, keeping both knees straight, the left hand at the swell, the right at the small with the fingers extended, the barrel perpendicular, and the head well up.

XXIX.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Throw the piece up to the shoulder, bringing up the right foot to its proper place, and seize the butt with the left hand.

2d. Quit the small with the right hand, and bring it down to its first position.

XXX.

Slope Arms. { 1st. Throw forward the butt, and left hand square with the body, from shoulder to the elbow, letting the arm feel the side, and the barrel forming an angle of about 45 degrees over the left shoulder.

XXXI.

Carry Arms. { 1st. Bring the butt and left hand to their former positions; raising the right hand smartly to the small, and steady the piece.
2d. Drop the right hand to its first position.

XXXII.

Trail Arms. { 1st. Bring up the right, seizing the piece opposite the hollow of the left shoulder.
2d. Bring down the piece to the right side, the butt about six inches off the ground, the barrel forming an angle of about 45 degrees.

XXXIII.

Shoulder Arms. { 1st. Shift the piece up in the right hand so as the little finger will be near the feather-spring, throwing it up into the proper shouldered position, and instantly seize the piece at the butt.
2d. Bring down the right hand to its first position.

XXXIV.

Recover Arms. { With a quick motion of the left hand spring the piece briskly round to your left breast, at the same instant seize the piece at the small with the right hand, shifting the left to the swell, so far that the little finger may touch the feather-spring, let the barrel range with the left eye, and the cock nearly touching the left breast.

XXXV.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. Quit the piece with the left hand, and carry it to the shoulder with the right, striking the butt smartly and taking the usual hold with the left hand.

2d. Quit the small with the right hand, and bring it to its first position.

XXXVI.

*Advance
Arms.*

1st. and 2d. The same as the two motions of the poise.

3d. Throw the piece with the left hand to the right side, the barrel to the rear, the left hand at the swell, the guard between the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand, the other three fingers below the cock, and the barrel perpendicular before the hollow of the right shoulder.

4th. Quit the piece with the left hand and bring it to its first position.

XXXVII.

*Shoulder
Arms.*

1st. With a quick motion raise the piece, seizing it the same instant with both hands at once, the right fingers below the guard, the thumb in front of the small, and the left hand coming smartly across the body, seizes it at the swell, keeping the barrel in to the hollow of the shoulder.

2d. Throw the piece smartly to a poise.

3d. & 4th. Shoulder and quit the right hand.

XXXVIII.

Order Arms.

{ Come to the order agreeably to art.
XVI. of the Manual.

XXXIX.

*Ground
Arms.*

1st. Turn the piece with the right hand, bringing the lock to the rear, and step forward 30 inches with the left, placing the left hand on the knee, in order to support the body, lay the piece on the ground perpendicular to front, the right knee bent near the ground, and the eyes kept well up.

2d. Quit the firelock with the right hand, raise the body up, bring back the left foot, and assume the position of *attention*, see § 2.

XL.

*Take up
Arms.*

1st. Step forward with the left foot, coming to the position of grounding, seize the piece a little above the tail-pipe.

2d. Raise up the body, bringing back the left foot to its former position, turn the barrel to the rear, extending the hand on the sling the same as at the order.

The following mode of fixing bayonet from the order, is in general use by the British, though not used in the drill of the troops of the United States.

*Fix
Bayonet.*

1st. Shift the thumb of the right hand behind the barrel, taking hold of the piece.

2d. Push the piece a little forward, at the same time draw the bayonet with the left hand, and fix it with the utmost celerity.

3d. Return to the order, as before directed, and stand perfectly steady.

In unfixing the bayonet, it is also from the order, in the same manner as fixing, only reversed.

§ 31.....*Marching to the Front and Rear.*

Fig. 2. The Squad should be particularly well dressed; files correct; arms carried; the rear ranks covering exactly, and each individual to have his just attitude and position before the squad is ordered to move. The march will be made by the right or left flank, and a proper trained man will therefore conduct it. At the word *March*, each man steps forward a full pace.....The recruit must not turn his head to the hand to which he is dressing, as a turn of the shoulders would undoubtedly follow.....His elbows must be kept steady, without constraint; if they are opened from his body, the next man must be pressed upon; if they are closed, there arises an improper distance which must be filled up; in either case waving on the march will take place, and must therefore be avoided.

Turning to the right or left, or about, in march, is not to be at first practised; but the squad is to *Halt front*, by command, and then *March*.

On many occasions where a body great or small, after a movement to the rear, or in file, is immediately to resume its front; instead of the words to halt, and face about, the word *Halt front*, as one command will be given, when it is instantly to face to its proper front in line. Nor in general should there be any sensible pause between the halt front, of any body, and it is after fronting, that the dressing, if necessary, is ordered to take place.

As the being able to march straight forward is of the utmost consequence, he who commands at the drill will take the greatest pains in making his squad do so ;....For this purpose he will often go behind his squad, or division, place himself behind the flank file by which the squad is to move in marching, and take a point, or object, exactly in front of that file ; he

will then command *March*, and remaining in his place, he will direct the advance of the squad, by keeping the flank file always in a line with the object.....It is also from behind, that one soonest perceives the leaning back of the soldier, and the bringing forward or falling back of a shoulder; faults which ought instantly to be rectified, as productive of the worst consequence in a line, where one man, by bringing forward a shoulder, may change the direction of the march, and oblige a wing of a battallion to run, in order to keep dressed.

In short, it is impossible to labor too much at making the soldier march straight forward, keeping always the same front as when he set off.....This is effected by moving solely from the haunches, keeping the body steady, the shoulders square, and the head to the front; and will without difficulty be attained by a strict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful observance of an equal length of step, and an equal cadence, or time of march.

Changing from *ordinary* to *quick time*, and from *quick* to *ordinary time*, must always be preceded by a previous, but instantaneous *halt*; although this may not appear essential for the movements of a squad, division, or battalion, it is absolutely so for those of a larger body, and is therefore required in small ones.

Turning on the march, in order to continue it, though inaccurate and improper for a large body, is necessary, when companies, or divisions are moving in file, and that without halting it is eligible to make them move on in front; or when moving in front, it is proper, without halting, to make them move on in file.

As helps for fixing the true time, or cadence of the march, the plummet must be frequently resorted to; the words *left, right*, may, when necessary, be repeated, slowly for ordinary time, and quicker for quick time.

§ 32.....*Open, and Close Order, on the March.*

<i>Rear Ranks</i> <i>take</i> <i>Open Order.</i>	{	The squad, when moving to the front in ordinary time, receives the word <i>Rear Ranks take Open Order</i> , on which the front rank continues its march, without altering the pace, and the centre and rear ranks mark the time, viz. the centre once, and step; the rear stepping off on the third pace.
--	---	---

<i>Rear Ranks</i> <i>take</i> <i>Close Order.</i>	{	On the word <i>Rear Ranks take Close Order</i> , the centre and rear ranks step nimbly up to close order, and instantly resume the pace, at which the front rank has continued to march.
---	---	--

§ 33.....*March in File to a Flank.*

The accuracy of the march in file is so essential in all deployments into line and in the internal movements of the divisions of the battalion, that the soldier cannot be too much exercised to it.....The whole battalion, as well as its divisions, is required to make this flank movement without the least opening out, or lengthening of the file, and in perfect cadence, and equality of step.

To the.....
face,
March.

After *facing*, and at the word *March*, the whole squad steps off at the same instant, each replacing, or rather overstepping the foot of the man before him; that is, the right foot of the second man comes within the left foot of the first, and thus of every one, more or less over-lapping, according to the closeness, or openness of the files, and length of step.....The front rank will march straight along the given line, each soldier of that rank must look along the necks of those before him, and never to right or left; otherwise a waving of the march will take place, and of course the loss, and extension of the line, and distance, whenever the body returns to its proper front. The centre and rear ranks must look to, and regulate themselves by, their leaders of the front rank, and always dress in their file. Although file marching is in general made in quick time; yet it must also be practised, and made in ordinary time. The same position of feet, as above, takes place in all marching in front, where the ranks are close, and locked up.

With a little attention and practice this mode of marching, which appears so difficult, will be found by every soldier to be easier than the common method of marching by files, when on every halt the rear must run up to gain the ground it has unnecessarily lost.

§ 34.....*Wheeling in File.*

The squad, when marching in file, must be accustomed to wheel its head to either flank; each file

following successively, without losing, or encreasing distance.....On this occasion, each file makes its separate wheel on a pivot moveable in a very small degree, but without altering its time of march, or the eyes of the rear ranks being turned from their front rank. The front rank men, whether they are pivot men, or not, must keep up their distance, and the wheeling men must take a very extended step, and loose no time in moving on.

The head of a company or battalion marching in file, must change direction in the same manner on the moveable pivot, by gradually gaining the new from the old direction, and thereby avoiding the sudden stop that otherwise would take place.

§ 35.....*Oblique Marching in Front.*

*Right
Oblique.*

When the Squad is marching in front, and receives the word, *To the Right, Oblique*; each man, the first time he raises the right foot, will instead of throwing it straight forward, carry it in the diagonal direction, as has been already explained in § 8, taking care not to alter the position of his body, shoulders, or head. The greatest attention is to be paid to the shoulders of every man in the squad, that they remain parallel to the line on which they first were placed, and that the right shoulders do not fall to the rear, which they are very apt to do in obliquing to the right, and which immediately changes the direction to the front. On the word *forward*, the incline ceases, and the whole march forward. In obliquing to the left, the same rules are to be observed, with the difference of the left leg going to the left, and attention to keep up the left shoulder.

Forward.

The same instructions that are given for ordinary time, serve also for quick time; but this movement though it may be made by a squad or division, cannot be required from a larger body in quick time.

Obliquing to the right is to be practised sometimes with the eyes to the left; and obliquing to the left, with the eyes to the right; as being absolutely necessary on many occasions; for if one of the battalions of a line in advancing be ordered to oblique to the right, or to the left, the eyes must still continue turned towards its centre.

§ 36.....*Oblique Marching in File.*

In obliquing to the right, or left, by files, the center and rear rank men will continue looking to their leaders of the front rank. Each file is to consider itself as an entire rank, and is to preserve the same front, and position of the shoulders, during the oblique, as before it began. This being a very useful movement, the recruit should be often practised in it.

§ 37.....*Wheeling forward from the Halt.*

<i>Right Wheel.</i> <i>March.</i> <i>Halt.</i>	{	Strict attention should be paid to § 20, in this wheel of the Squad. On the word <i>Right (or left) Wheel</i> , the rear ranks if at one pace distant, lock up. At the word <i>March</i> , the whole step together in the quickest time, and the rear ranks during the wheel, incline so as to cover their proper front rank men. At the word <i>Halt</i> , the whole remain perfectly steady.
--	---	--

Wheeling Backward....Wheeling from the March, on a Moveable Pivot....Stepping Out....Stepping Short....Marking Time....Changing the Feet....The Side Step; and Stepping Back, should now be practised by the Squad, as has been fully detailed in the foregoing sections.

It cannot be too strongly inculcated, or too often recollected, that upon the correct equality of march, established and practised by all the troops of the same army, every just movement and manœuvre depends. When this is not attended to, disunion, and confusion, must necessarily take place, on the junction of several battalions in corps, although, when taken individually, each may be in most respects well trained: It is in the original instruction of the recruit, and squad, that this great point is to be labored at, and attained. The *time* is infallibly ascertained, by the frequent corrections of the *plummet*, which, when so applied, will soon give to each man that habitual measure so much desired; and should be in the hand of every person that commands or drills the squad; and as has been observed, before any squad is put in march, 5 or 6 taps of the drum should often be given in exact time, as regulated by the plummet, which will imprint the true measure on each ear, and prepare for taking an accurate step at the word *March*.

END OF PART FIRST.

PART II.

§ 38....OF THE PLATOON OR COMPANY.

THE Company should be formed at first in single rank, files gently touching, and with ordered arms, each man occupying about 22 inches, they will then receive the word, *attention ;....shoulder arms ;...right face ;....rank and size ;....march ;....* on which the tall men will move to the right, and the short men to the left ; they will then be ordered *front face ;....* and be told off for double file ; the *left files* on the word *double*, step briskly back one pace and cover the front rank ;....after which the files will be closed to the right by the *side step ;....* the rear rank will then be cautioned to form on the left of the front rank ; *left face ;....march ;....* they will again be told off and *doubled ;* and if 40 strong, may be counted off into sections of five, and formed three deep ; at the word, *form three deep*, the third section steps back one pace, when it receives the word *right face ;* the man in the front rank inclines to his right, and on the word *quick march*, the front rank men of the third section step off, those of the other rank mark time till they have past, and then follow in rank and file....When the leading man has arrived on the right of the platoon, he receives the word *halt, front*, on which each man halts, faces to his left, and instantly covers his proper file leader.

The company being now in platoon order, they will form two divisions or platoons, for the purpose of exercise ; the captain taking post on the

right of the first platoon, covered by a serjeant in the rear rank ; the lieutenant on the right of the second, also covered by a serjeant; the ensign four paces in the rear of the first platoon ; a serjeant on the left of each platoon ; the other non-commissioned officers make a fourth or supernumerary rank in the rear of the second division.

When thus formed, the company should practise

Opening,	}	of Ranks.	§ 26 and 27.
and			
Closing			

Dressing	{	to the front,	{	by the right and left;
		to the rear,		
		in an oblique direction,		

and be exercised in the several motions of the fire-lock, as have been shewn in the preceding part.

Close order is the Chief and primary order in which the battalion, and its parts, should at all times assemble, and form.... *Open order* is only regarded as an exception from it, and occasionally used in situations of parade and show. In close order the rear ranks are closed up within one pace; the length of which is to be taken from the heels of one rank to the heels of the next rank. In open order they are two paces distant from each other.

§ 39.....Of the Platoon Exercise.

The following directions apply to the centre and rear ranks, with the exceptions: that the centre rank comes to the priming position, with the butt of the piece at the waist, and the muzzle raised in proportion. The rear rank comes to the priming position with the butt high under the arm, and kept well forward, so that the right hand may move round to the cartridge box with ease, and the muzzle elevated in proportion.

1st. Throw the piece to a recover, and immediately bring it to the priming position, placing the thumb of the right hand against the face of the steel, the fingers clenched, and the wrist rather turned out.

2d. Throw the steel up, holding the piece steady and directly to the front with the left hand.

*Prime
and
Load.*

3d. Handle cartridge,

4th. Prime,

5th. Shut pan,

6th. Load with cartridge,

7th. Draw rammer,

8th. Ram down cartridge,

9th. Return rammer,

10th. Shoulder arms.

Front Rank.

Bring the piece up to the recover; without stopping, sink down with a quick motion on the right knee, keeping the left foot fast; the butt at the same time falling upon the ground; cock, and instantly seize the cock and steel together, in the right hand, holding the piece firm in the left, about midway between the stock and the swell; the point of the left thumb close to the swell, and pointing upward. As the body is sinking, the right knee is to be thrown so far back, that the left leg may be perpendicular; the right foot a little turned out, the body straight and head well up. The piece must be perpendicular, and the butt about four inches to the right of the left foot.

Make Ready



*The above is a correct representation of the platoon,
at Make Ready.*

Take Aim.

{ Slide the left hand to the full extent of the arm along the sling, at the same time spring up the butt by the lock with the right hand, so high that the head may not be too much lowered in taking aim; the fore finger on the trigger, the right eye along the barrel: remain steady.



*The above is a correct representation of the platoon,
in the Firing position.*

Fire.

Draw the trigger smartly, and the moment you have fired spring up nimbly upon the left leg; the body erect, the left foot fast, bring the right heel to the hollow of the left foot; at the same instant drop the piece to the priming position, the height of the waist....half-cock.....handle cartridge, and proceed in loading.

Centre Rank.

Make Ready { Come to the recover, at the same time step to the right, about 9 inches, and cock the piece by placing the thumb on the cock, and dropping the elbow, the left foot must be kept fast, with the toe pointed to the right.

Take Aim. { Bring the piece down as in the front rank, and throw the principal weight of the body on the right foot.

Fire. { Fire, and instantly bring up the left heel within one inch of the right, and come to the priming position at the height of the fifth rib, and instantly cover the front file.

Rear Rank.

Make Ready,
Take Aim, { Come to the recover, and immediately step to the right about half a pace, and on coming down with the piece, step forward with the left foot 12 inches in front of the right, throwing the body to the front, and the principal weight on the left foot: let the muzzle pass the front rank. *Fire.* and immediately come to the priming position high under the arm, cover the front ranks, and load.

§ 40....*Of the Firings.*

The firing direct to front has been already shewn but it sometimes becomes necessary to fire obliquely to right and left; the angle required ought not to exceed 45 degrees, if it can be avoided; these

firings must be practised in closed ranks, and files opened to 30 inches. If the angle exceeds 45 degrees, the platoon may be thrown into the echelon position in any part of the circle less than a quarter, and by this means direct the fire on the object required.

Firing by ranks in succession, and by files, must also be frequently practised, until each individual has acquired the promptness and the steadiness necessary in a well disciplined corps.

In practising the firing motions, a piece of wood should be used instead of a flint, for the purpose of preserving the steel.

§ 41....*Movements of the Platoon.*

BY RANKS.

1. March in single file, by successive ranks, along the square of the parade.....The same by double files.

2. March and wheel by ranks of four....file off singly and double up, preserving proper distances, and not quickening on the wheel.

3. March and wheel, by sub-divisions.

4. March and wheel by whole ranks.

5. March to front, and rear; ranks at 10 paces asunder.

6. March the company in single rank, to front and to rear, by a flank, and by the centre.

7. Oblique by ranks.

8. Open, and close files.

9. March in file to either flank.

10. Ranks successively advance 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dress....Ranks successively fall back 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dress.
11. Advance, or retire 2 or 3 flank men; the ranks dress to them.
12. Open and close ranks.

At Close Ranks, and Files.

13. March, and wheel in all directions, by subdivisions and by company.....Step Short....Step Out.....March both in Ordinary and Quick Time.....
14. Advance, and retire, two or three flank files, and dress to them.
15. Open and close to the flank, by the side step.
16. Change front by the countermarch by files.
17. March to the flanks, close and without opening out....Form to the front, or to either flank.
18. March Obliquely to the right and left.
19. Sub-divisions double on the march, and again form up, by obliquing.
20. Wheel backwards by sub-divisions....March along the line, to prolong it....form to the flank, by wheeling up; or to front by obliquing.
21. File from the flank to the rear, as in the passage of lines....Halt, front....Close into pivot file....Wheel up, as in forming in line.
22. Form platoon order, from two deep.
23. From two deep, form platoon order.
24. Exercise of the firelock; manual and platoon, by ranks and company.
25. Firings by files, sub-divisions and company.

These movements may be practised in whatever succession shall be thought most proper....Great precision should be observed in their execution.

§ 42....*Marching to the Front.*

Fig. 2.

In the drill of the platoon, the person instructing must always consider it as a company in battalion, and regulate all its movements upon that principle; he will therefore, before he puts it in motion to front, or rear, indicate which flank is to direct, by giving the word EYES RIGHT, or EYES LEFT; and then MARCH.... Should the right be the directing flank, the commander of the platoon himself will fix on objects to march upon in a line truly perpendicular to the front of the platoon; and when the left flank is ordered to direct, he and his covering serjeant will shift to the left of the front rank, and take such objects to march upon.... To MARCH on one object only, and to preserve a straight line, is an operation not to be depended on; the conductor of the platoon before the word MARCH is given, will therefore endeavour to remark some distinct object on the ground, in his own front, and perpendicular to the directing flank: he will then observe some nearer and intermediate point in the same line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, &c. these he will move upon with accuracy, and as he approaches the nearest of those points, he must from time to time choose fresh ones in the original direction, which he will by this means preserve, never having less than two such points to move upon. If no object in the true line can be ascertained, his own squareness of person must determine the direction of the march.

A person placed in the rear of a body can, more readily than if placed in its front, determine the line

which is perpendicular to such front ; and could we suppose ranks and files most perfectly correct, the prolongation of each file would be a perpendicular to the front of the body.

As the MARCH of every body, except in the case of inclining, is made on lines perpendicular to its then front, each individual composing that body must in his person be placed, and remain perfectly square to the given line ; otherwise he will naturally and insensibly move in a direction perpendicular to his own person, and thereby open out, or close in, according to the manner in which he is turned from the true point of his march....If the distortion of a single man operates in this manner, and all turnings of the head do so distort him, it may be easily imagined what that of several will occasion, each of whom is marching on a different front, and whose lines of direction are crossing each other.

Accuracy and squareness of position, the equality of cadence and step, the light touch of the files, which is never to be relinquished, just distances, and true lines of movement, will give, without apparent constraint, the head being turned, or the least trouble taken in dressing, the most decisive exactness in the marches, and operations of the largest bodies.

The platoon, during its march in line, will occasionally be ordered to

Step Out.....Mark Time.....Step Short.....Open and Close Ranks....Oblique.

§ 43.....*The Side Step.*

The *side*, or *closing step*, must also be frequently practised ; it is very necessary and useful on ma-

ny occasions, when halted, and when a very small distance is to be moved to either flank :....As for instance, to open, or close files ; to join one division to, or open it from another ; to regain an interval in line ; to move a whole battalion, or parade, 20 or 30 paces to a flank ; to regulate distances between close columns before deploying ;....alterations made in this manner are imperceptible from the front, and better made than by facing, and file marching ; the words of command must be decided and strong.

TO THE RIGHT CLOSE.	{	When the whole platoon is to close, at the word TO THE RIGHT CLOSE, the platoon officer takes one step to the front and instantly faces about, the covering serjeant replacing him. On the word MARCH, the whole move together agreeably to the directions (in § 14). On the word HALT, the platoon officer resumes his place, having stepped in the same manner as the men, but fronting them, and thereby assisted in preserving the direction.
MARCH.		
HALT.		

§ 44....*The Back Step.*

STEP BACK	{	The platoon must be accustomed from the halt, at the words STEP BACK.....
—MARCH.		MARCH, to step back any ordered number of paces in the ordinary time, and length, as it is in operation that may be frequently required from a battalion.

§ 45....*File Marching.*

LEFT FACE.	{	In marching by files, the commander of the platoon will lead the front rank ; therefore when the movement is by the left, on the word TO THE LEFT FACE, he, and his

QUICK
MARCH.

Halt
front.

covering serjeant, will instantly shift to the left flank of the platoon; at the word QUICK MARCH, the whole steps off together and on the word *Halt, front*, the leader, and his serjeant, will return to their posts on the right.

§ 46....*Wheeling from a Halt.*

RIGHT
WHEEL
MARCH.

Halt,
Dress.

In wheeling either forward, or backward from a halt, the commander of the platoon on the word RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL, moves out and places himself one pace in front of the centre of his platoon: during the wheel, he turns towards his men, and inclines towards that flank which has been named as the directing, or pivot one, giving the word *Halt, Dress*, when his wheeling man has just completed the required degree of wheel: he then squares his platoon, but without moving what was the standing flank, and takes his post on the directing flank.

§ 47....*Wheeling forward by Sub-divisions from Line.*

On the caution BY SUB-DIVISIONS, TO THE RIGHT WHEEL, the commander of the platoon places himself one pace in front of the centre of the right sub-division, at the same time the men on the right of the front rank of each sub-division face to the right.

MARCH.

Fig. 3. A.

At the word MARCH, each sub-division steps off in wheeling time, observing the directions given in, § 20, and 37. The commander of the platoon turning towards the

Halt,
Dress. { men of the leading sub-division, and inclining to its left (the proper pivot flank), gives the word *Halt, Dress*, for both sub-divisions, as his wheeling man is taking the last step that finishes the wheel square; and instantly posts himself on the left of the pivot flank.....The serjeant coverer, during the wheel goes round by the rear, and takes post on the pivot flank of the second sub-division.....It is to be observed, that the commander of the platoon invariably takes post with the leading sub-division: therefore, when the platoon wheels by sub-divisions to the left, the commander of the platoon moves out to the centre of the left sub-division, and during the wheel inclines towards the right, now become the proper pivot flanks of the sub-divisions.

The *proper* pivot flank in column, is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front; the other may be called the *reverse* flank.

In column, divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank: to the left when the right is in front: and the right when the left is in front.

§ 48....*Wheeling backward by Sub-divisions from Line.*

The platoon will also break into open column of sub-divisions by wheeling backwards....When the right is intended to be in front; at the caution BY SUBDIVISIONS OF THE LEFT, BACKWARDS WHEEL, the commander of the platoon moves out briskly and places himself in front of the centre of the right sub-division.....The man on the left of the front rank of each sub-division at the same time faces to the right.

MARCH.

Fig. 4. B.

*Halt,
Dress.*

On the word MARCH, each subdivision wheels backward in the quickest time, as directed in § 22. During the wheel, the commander of the platoon turns towards his men, inclining at the same time to the left, or pivot flank, and on completing the wheel, gives the word *Halt, Dress*, to both divisions: he and his covering serjeant, then place themselves on the left flanks of their sub-divisions.

It may be considered as a rule almost general (the reasons for which are given in the following part) that all wheels of the battalion, or line, (when halted, and the divisions do not exceed 16, or 18 files,) into column, should be backward.—And all wheels from column into line, forward. The only necessary exceptions seem to be in a narrow ground, where there is no room for such wheels.

§ 49....*Marching on an Aligement, in Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

Fig. 5. B.

The platoon having wheeled backwards by subdivisions from line, (as directed in the foregoing section) and a distant marked object in the prolongation of the two pivot flanks being taken; the commander of the platoon, who is now on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division, immediately fixes on his intermediate points to march on, (see § 42.) On the word *March*, given by the instructor of the drill both divisions step off at the same instant, the leader of the first division marching with the utmost steadiness and equality of pace on the points he has taken; and the commander of the second division preserving the leader of the first in

an exact line with the distant object; at the same time he keeps the distance necessary for forming from the preceding division; which distance is to be taken from the preceding division; which distances to be taken from the front rank.... These objects are in themselves sufficient to occupy the whole attention of the leaders of the two divisions; therefore they must not look to, nor endeavour to correct the march of their divisions, which care must be entirely left to the non-commissioned officers of the supernumerary rank.

§ 50.... *Wheeling into Line from Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

HALT.

LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

MARCH.

The platoon being in open column of sub-divisions, marching at ordinary step on the alignment, receives the word HALT, from the instructor of the drill both divisions instantly halt, and the instructor sees that the leaders of the divisions are correct on the line in which they have moved; he then gives the word (supposing the right of the platoon in front) by sub-divisions TO THE LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE; on which the commander of the platoon goes to the centre of his sub-division, the two pivot men face to their left exactly square with the alignment, and a serjeant runs out and places himself in a line with them so as to mark the precise point at which the right flank of the leading sub-division is to halt, when it shall have completed its wheel.... At the word MARCH, the whole wheel up

Halt Dress.

Eyes front.

{ in quickest time; during the wheel, the commander of the platoon, turning towards his men, inclines to the wheeling flank, and gives the word *Halt, Dress*, at the moment the wheel of the division is completing; the commander of the platoon, if necessary, corrects the internal dressing of the platoon on the serjeant and pivot men; this dressing must be quickly made, and when done, the commander of the platoon gives the word *Eyes front*, in a moderate tone of voice, and takes post in line as directed in § 38.

In all wheels of the divisions of a column that are to be made on a halted pivot in order to form line, the flank firelock of the front rank on the hand wheeled to, is such pivot, not the officer who may be on that flank, and whose business it is to conform to it.

All wheelings by sub-divisions, or sections, from line into column, or from column into line, are performed on the word given by the commander of a battalion, when the whole of a battalion is at the same instant so to wheel, or on the word given by the commander of the company, when companies singly or successively, so wheel: they are not to be repeated by the leaders of its divisions.

§ 51....*Open Column of Sub-divisions wheeling into an Alignement.*

Halt, Wheel.

{ The platoon being in open column of sub-divisions, marching in ordinary time; when its leading division arrives at the ground, where the wheel is to commence, it receives the word *Halt, right, or left, Wheel*, from its com-

Halt, Dress. { mander; on which the rear ranks, if
 at one pace distance, lock up; the
 flank front rank man alone halts, and
 faces into the new direction, while
 the others quicken their pace to the
 wheeling time, and regulate their step
 by the outward hand (to which they
 have turned their eyes), until the
 wheel is completed.....He then gives
 the word *Halt, Dress*, for his division
 to dress to the hand it is to move by;
March. { and whenever the second division,
 which has continued to advance in
 ordinary time, arrives close on the
 wheeling point, he gives his division
 the word *March*, and moves on in
 ordinary time, so as its rear rank
 does not occasion even a momentary
 stop to the division behind it, which
Halt, Wheel. { at that instant receives the word *Wheel*,
Halt, Dress. { then *Halt, Dress*, and finally *March*,
March. { whenever the leading division has
 gained its proper distance from it.

The officer conducting the leading (and every other) division of the column in march, on any given point or object where it is to wheel into a new direction, and to its proper pivot hand on a halted pivot; always stops at that point or object, close on his own outward hand and gives the word *WHEEL*, when the front rank of his division has taken *ONE* pace beyond such object; he thus allows space for his own person (when the wheel is finished) to move on close behind the new direction of march.

But if the proper pivot flank is to be the wheeling one, each commander of a division gives his word *Wheel*, as he successively arrives at such a distance from the point on which he has moved, as that at the

completion of the wheel, his division may *halt* perpendicular to the new line, but with the given point, of course, behind the proper pivot; and that he also in his own person be on the new direction, prepared to give his word *March*, and to proceed.

The sub-divisions must take care that they continue their march correctly upon, and wheel exactly at the point where the leading one wheeled, and that they do not shift to either flank, which without much attention they are apt to do.

In this manner the sub-divisions succeed each other; and if the words of command be justly given; no stop made on arriving at the wheeling point; the wheels performed at an increased time and step; and the proper halt, dressing, and pause, be made after the wheel; no extension of the column will take place, but the just distances between the divisions will be preserved.

The officer conducting the directing flank of a division, may during the wheel be advanced one or two paces before it, and remain so, facing to the flank, that he may the more critically be enabled to give his word *Halt*; at which instant, he will again place himself on the flank ready to judge his distance, and to give the word *March*.

§ 52....*In Open Column of Sub-divisions wheeling into a new Direction, on a moveable Pivot.*

<p><i>Right Shoulders forward.</i></p>	{	<p>The commander of the leading sub-division, when at a due distance from the intended new direction, will give the word <i>Right</i> (or left) <i>Shoulders forward</i>, (see § 23), and he himself care-</p>
--	---	--

Forward.

fully preserving the rate of march, without the least alteration of step or time, will begin to circle in his own person from the old into the new direction, so as not to make an abrupt wheel, or that either flank shall be stationary; the rest of his division on the principle of dressing will conform to the direction he is giving them: when this is effected he will give the word *Forward....* The leader of the second sub-division, when he arrives at the ground on which the first began to wheel, will in this manner follow the exact tract of the first, always preserving this proper distance from him.

Thus without the constraint of formal wheels; a column when not confined on its flanks, may be conducted in all kinds of windings and changeable directions; for if the changes be made gradual and circling, and that the pivot leaders of divisions pursue their proper path at the same uniform equal pace, the true distances of divisions will be preserved which is the great regulating object on this occasion, and to which every other consideration must give way.

To which ever hand the wheel is made on a moveable pivot, it is made within and cuts off the angle formed by the intersection of the old and new directions.

In wheeling in column of march on a fixed pivot, the outward file, whether officer or private, is the one wheeled on.

§ 53.... *Countermarch by Files.*

The platoon, when it is to countermarch, must always be considered as a division of a battalion in

column; the instructor of the drill will therefore, previous to his giving the caution to countermarch, signify whether the right or left is supposed to be in front, that the commander of the platoon and his covering serjeant, may be placed on the pivot flank before such caution is given, as it is an inviolable rule in the countermarch of the divisions of a column by files, that the facings be made from the flank, then the pivot one, to the one which is to become such.

<p>FACE.</p> <p>QUICK MARCH.</p> <p><i>Halt,</i> <i>Front.</i> <i>Dress.</i></p>	<p>{</p> <p>{</p> <p>{</p>	<p>On the word TO THE RIGHT, or left, FACE, the platoon faces, the commander of it immediately goes to the other flank, and his covering serjeant advancing to the spot which he has quitted, faces the right about.....At the word QUICK MARCH, the whole except the serjeant coverer, step off together, the platoon officer wheeling short round the rear rank (viz. to his right, if he has shifted to the right of the platoon; or to his left, if he be on the left of it); and proceeds, followed by the platoon in file, till he has conducted his pivot front rank man close to his serjeant, who has remained immoveable; he then gives the words <i>Halt, Front,</i> and <i>Dress,</i> squares and closes his platoon on his serjeant, and then replaces him.</p>
--	----------------------------	--

All countermarches by files necessarily tend to an extension of the files; unity of step is therefore absolutely indispensable, and the greatest care must be taken that the wheel of each file be made close, quick, and at an increased length of step of the wheeling man, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole.

Companies, or their divisions when brought up in file to a new line, are not to stand in that position, till the men cover each other minutely; but the instant the leading man is at his point, they will receive the word *Halt, Front*, and in that situation close in, and dress correctly.

§ 54.....*Wheeling on the Centre of the Platoon.*

The platoon must be accustomed to wheel upon its centre, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every shape, which circumstances can require of it; but always by order, and by a decided command.

The words of command are,

PLATOON,	{	RIGHT,	}	WHEEL.
ON		LEFT,		
YOUR CENTRE		RIGHT ABOUT,		
TO THE		LEFT ABOUT,		

MARCH.

Halt,
Dress.

When the wheel to be made is to the right or right about, the right half platoon is the one to wheel backward, and the left forward.....The reverse will take place, when the wheel is to be made to the left, or to the left about....On the word MARCH, the whole move together in the quickest time, regulating by the two flank men, who during the wheel preserve themselves in a line with the centre of the platoon;....as soon as the required degree of wheel is performed, the commander of the platoon gives the word *Halt, Dress*, and instantly squares it from that flank, on which he himself is to take post.

§ 55....*Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column Halted.*

Fig. 5. D.

INCREASING.

FORM
PLATOON.

Rear
Sub-division,
left Oblique.
Q. March.
Forward.
Halt, Dress.

The platoon standing in open column of sub-divisions (suppose the right in front) receives from the instructor a caution to FORM PLATOON.The commander of the platoon turning round instantly orders, *Rear Sub-division, left Oblique.... Q. March.* When it has obliqued so as to open its right flank, he gives the word *Forward*; and on its arriving in a line with the first division he orders, *Halt, Dress*, and takes post on the left, the pivot flank of the platoon.

Fig. 5. C.

DIMINISHING.

FORM SUB-
DIVISIONS.

Left
Sub-division
inwards face.

Q. March.

Halt, Front.
Left Dress.

On the cautionary command from the instructor to FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the serjeant coverer falls back to mark the point where the left flank of the sub-division is to be placed.... The commander of the platoon advancing one step, orders *Left sub-division inwards face*, and instantly on facing, the three leading files disengage to the rear.

At the word *Q. March*, the file passes round, and behind the serjeant, and at the proper instant receives the words; *Halt, Front,.... Left, Dress....* The commander of the platoon is now on the left flank of the first sub-division, and his serjeant on that of the second.

It should be observed as a general rule in diminishing the front of a column, by the doubling of sub-divisions or sections (whether the column be halted or in motion) that the sub-division or section, on the *reverse* flank, is the one behind which the other sub-divisions, or sections, double.....Thus when the right is in front, the doubling will be in the rear of the right division; and, vice versa, when the left is in front; by which means, the column is at all times in a situation to form line to the flank, with its divisions in their natural order, by simply wheeling up on the pivot flanks.....And in increasing the front of a column, the rear sub-divisions, or sections, oblique to the hand the pivot flank is on; so that when the right is front, the obliquing will be to the left; and the reverse when the left is in front.

§ 56.....*Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column on the March.*

Fig. 6. B.

INCREASING.

FORM PLATOON.	<p>The platoon marching at the ordinary time in open column sub-divisions (suppose the right in front), receives from the instructor the caution, to FORM PLATOON; the commander of the platoon instantly turning round gives the words, <i>left Oblique....quick March</i>; on which the rear sub-division obliqued to the left, and as soon as its right flank is open, receives the word, <i>Forward</i>.....When it gets up to the first sub-division (which has continued to march, with the utmost steadiness), the commander of the platoon gives the word <i>ordinary</i>, and takes post on the pivot flank, towards which he has been moving.</p>
<i>Left Oblique</i> <i>Q. March.</i>	
<i>Forward.</i>	
<i>Ordinary.</i>	

Fig. 6. A.

DIMINISHING.

FORM
SUBDIVISIONS.

*Left
Sub-division.
Mark time.*

Quick oblique.

Forward.

When the instructor gives the caution to FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the commander of the platoon advancing one step, immediately orders, *Left sub-division, mark time*; this it does until the right one, which continues its march steadily at the ordinary pace, has cleared its flank; he then orders the left sub-division, *quick oblique*, and when he perceives that it has doubled properly behind the right one, he gives the word *Forward*, on which it takes up the ordinary march, and follows at its due distance of wheeling, he himself being then placed on the pivot flank of the sub-division, and his serjeant on that of the second.

The same directions that apply to increasing or diminishing by sub-divisions, apply equally by sections, which individually repeat the same operations.

Increasing and reducing the front of a column, is an operation that will frequently occur in the march of large bodies; and it is of the utmost importance that it be performed with exactness.... The instructor of the drill must therefore be particularly attentive, that the transition from one situation to the other be made as quick as possible; that the leading division continues its march at the regular time and length of pace, and the exact distances between the divisions be accurately preserved.... During the operation, the ranks must be closed, arms carried, and the greatest attention required from each individual.

§ 57.....*The Platoon in Open Column of Sub-divisions to pass a short Defile, by breaking off Files.*

Fig. 7. C.

BREAK OFF
THREE FILES.

*Three files,
Right turn.*

The platoon is supposed in open column of sub-divisions, with the right in front, marching in ordinary time; when the leading division is arrived within a few paces of the defile, it receives from the instructor an order to break off a certain number of files, (suppose three).....The commander of the leading division instantly gives the word, *Three files on the left, right turn*; the named files immediately turn to the right, and wheel out in rear of the three adjoining files.....The commander of the sub-division himself closes into the flank of the part formed....When the second sub-division comes the spot where the first division contracted its front, it will receive the same words of command from its own leader, and will proceed in like manner.

*Two files,
Right turn.*

Should it be required to diminish the front of the column one or two files more, the commander of the leading division will, as before, order the desired number of files to *turn*; on which those already in the rear will incline to the right, so as to cover the files now ordered to break off, and which are wheeling out in the manner already prescribed.

In this movement, the files in the rear of the sub-divisions must lock well up, so as not to impede the march of the succeeding division.

*Three files
to the front.*

As the defile widens (or the instructor of the drill shall direct) the commander of the leading sub-division will order files to move up to the front, by giving the word, *One, two; or three files to the front* ; on which the named files turn to their front (the left,) and lengthening their pace, march up, file by file, to the front of their sub-division, and immediately resume the ordinary pace. Those files which are to continue in the rear will oblique to the left, lengthening also their step, till they cover, and are closed up to the three files on the left flank of their sub-division.

§ 58.....*Forming to the Front from File.*

HALT, FRONT.

CAUTION.

MARCH.

The platoon when marching in file may form to its front, either in sections, sub-divisions, or in platoon, the right flank being supposed to lead, on the word HALT, FRONT, the platoon instantly halts and faces to its left ; the CAUTION is then given, BY SECTIONS, SUB-DIVISIONS, OR PLATOON, ON THE LEFT BACKWARD WHEEL, and at the word MARCH, the wheel ordered is made, in the manner directed in § 48.

But in situations where it may have been necessary to order an extension of files, (such as will sometimes occur in marching through the streets of a town) a body thus moving, in order to avoid incorrect distances between the divisions, may form to the front in the following manner, either by platoon, sub-divisions, or sections.

FRONT FORM.
PLATOON.

Eyes left.

On the word, TO THE FRONT FORM PLATOON; the front rank man of the leading file alone halts, and is instantly covered by his centre and rear rank men: every other file of the platoon makes a half face to the left, and successively moving up, dresses on the right file; when the commander of the platoon sees it is properly dressed, he gives the word, *Eyes left*, and places himself on the pivot flank.

FRONT
FORM SUB-
DIVISIONS.

Front form.

Should the order have been, TO THE FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS (FORM SECTIONS), the leading sub-division, or section, will proceed in the manner already detailed for the platoon, the succeeding sub-divisions, or sections, will each continue moving on, until its front file arrives at the proper forming distance from the division in its front, when it will receive from its commander the word, *To the front form*, and will instantly form up by files, in the manner already described.

§ 59.....*Forming from File to either Flank.*

The platoon marching in file (suppose from the right) has only to halt, and front to be formed to the left flank.

*Right
form.*

To form to the right it will receive the word, *To the right form*; the front rank man of the leading file; instantly turns to his right, and halts; his centre and rear rank men at the same time move round and cover him.

{ All the other files of the platoon make a half turn to their left, and move round successively, in a line with the right hand file; the centre and rear rank men of each file, keeping closed well up to their file leaders.

§ 60.....*Form to either Flank, from Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

HALT.
LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE
MARCH.

{ The platoon marching in the ordina-
time in open column of sub-divisions,
to form to its left, receives the words
HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.....
MARCH, &c. and proceeds as has al-
ready been shewn in § 50.

RIGHT FORM
PLATOON.

*Halt, right
wheel.*
*Halt, right
dress.*

*Left
Oblique*

Forward.

{ To form the platoon to its right flank, the instructor gives the cautionary word of command, TO THE RIGHT FORM THE PLATOON; on which the commander of the several divisions shift to the right flank, and the commanders of the leading sub-division instantly gives the word to his division, *Halt, right wheel*; and when it has wheeled square, he orders *Halt, right dress*; goes to the right flank of his division, and dresses it on the intended line of formation.....The commander of the other sub-division, on the leading one being ordered to wheel, gives the word, *To the left oblique* and gradually inclines, so as to be able to march clear of the rear rank of the division forming; this being well effected, the word, *forward* will be given to the division, and it will

Halt, Right wheel.
Halt, Dress up.

{ move on in the rear of the one formed.
 When the second sub-division is arrived at the left flank of the first, its commander gives the word, *Right wheel*, then, *Halt, dress up* ; on which the division moves up into line, with the one formed ; and its commander, from the left of his first division, dresses his own on the given flank point as quickly and as accurately as possible, and resumes his proper platoon place.

§ 61....*The Platoon moving to the Front, to gain Ground to a Flank, by a March in Echelon, by Sections.*

In the drill of the platoon, when the soldier is Fig. 8. completely formed, he may be taught to march in echelon, by sections. This is a very useful movement for a battalion, or a large body moving in line, that is required to gain ground to a flank, and may be substituted instead of the oblique march....It will be performed in the following manner.

SECTIONS,
 RIGHT.

{ The platoon marching to the front in the ordinary time, receives the word, BY SECTIONS TO THE RIGHT ; the right hand men of the front rank of each section, turning in a small degree to their right, mark the time two or three paces, during which the sections are wheeling in ordinary time on their pivot men ; at the fourth pace, and at the word, *Forward*, the whole move on direct to the front that each section has now acquired, and the commander of each section, having taken post on the right of his division, the platoon continues its march in echelon.

FORM
PLATOON.

On the word, FORM PLATOON, the pivot men mark the time for three paces, turning back in a small degree to their left, the original front, and the sections instantly wheel backward into line ; at the fourth pace the whole move forward.

When the platoon is in two ranks only, two paces instead of three will be sufficient to mark time, and to step off at the third, instead of the fourth pace.

§ 62.....*From three Ranks forming in two Ranks.*

Fig. 9. FORM
B. TWO DEEP.
LEFT FACE.
QUICK MARCH.

*Halt, front.
Dress up.*

The platoon halted, is ordered, form TWO DEEP ; the rear rank men of the left sub-division instantly step back one pace ; on the word LEFT FACE, the rear rank of both sub-divisions face, the word QUICK MARCH is then given, on which the men of the rear rank of the left sub-division step short, until those of the right get up to them ; they then move on with them in file ; as their rear is clearing the left flank of the platoon, the commander (who has shifted to this flank during the movement) gives the words *Halt, front, dress up*, he instantly dresses them on the standing part of his platoon, and resumes his post on the right.....One third, or one more sub-division, is thus added to the front of the company.

Fig. 9. If a battalion is standing in open column, it may
C. thus increase the front of its companies, before it

forms in line : But if it is already in line and is thus to encrease its front, its companies must take sufficient intervals from each other, before their respective rear ranks can come up.....If a battalion in line is posted and without deranging its front is to lengthen out a flank by the aid of its rear rank ; it would order that rank to wheel backwards by subdivisions : The last sub-division of each company would close up to its first one : All the sub-divisions (on the head one) would move forward to open column : An officer would be named to command those of each two companies : The open column would move on, and wheel into line on the flank of the battalion.....In this manner also would a line of several battalions lengthen itself out by the rear ranks of each.

§ 63.....*From two Ranks forming into three Ranks.*

FORM THREE
DEEP.

RIGHT FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, front.

The platoon being halted and told off into three sections, it receives the word, FORM THREE DEEP ; on which the third section instantly steps back one pace ; the word RIGHT FACE is then given, and the man on the right of its front rank, on facing, disengages a little to his right ; on the word QUICK MARCH, the front rank men of the third section step off, those of the other rank mark the time till they have past, and then follow..... When the leading man has got to the right of the platoon, the commander gives the word *Halt, front*, on which each man halts, faces to his left, and instantly covers his proper file leader.

Fig. 9.
A.

A rear rank which has lengthened out, and formed on the flank of its battalion, would return to its

place, by wheeling back into open column of subdivisions ; marching till each arrived at its flank point ; the leading rank of each would wheel up and cover ; and the second rank would move behind it, and also wheel up.

Every officer should be instructed in each individual circumstance required of a recruit, or a soldier ; also in the exercise of the sword ; and accustomed to give words of command, with that energy, and precision, which is so essential.... Every officer, on first joining a regiment, should be examined by the commanding officer ; and, if he is found imperfect in the knowledge of the movements required from a soldier, he will be exercised that he may learn their just execution.... Till he is master of those points, and capable of instructing the men under his command he should not be permitted to take the command of a platoon in the battalion.

An officer should not only know the post, which he must occupy, in all changes of situation, the commands which he should give, and the general intention of the required movement ; but he should be master of the principles, on which each is made ; and of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid them himself, and to instruct others.... These principles are in themselves so simple, that moderate reflection, habit, and attention, will soon shew them to the eye, and fix them in the mind ; and individuals from time to time, when qualified, must be ordered to exercise the battalion, or its parts.

The complete instruction of an officer enlarges with his situation, and at last takes in the whole circle of military science.... From the variety of knowledge required of him, his exertion must be unremitting, to qualify himself for the progressive situation at which he arrives.

END OF PART SECOND.

FORMATION OF THE REGIMENT.

The regiment is ten companies,	{ 1 Grenadier, 8 Regiment, 1 Light.	Strength of the regiment.
Each company consisting of	{ 3 Officers, 4 Serjeants, 4 Corporals, 1 Drummer, 1 Fifer, 60 Privates.	

When the companies join, and the regiment is formed, there is no interval between any of them, grenadier, light company or other; but every part of the front of the regiment should appear equally strong.

Each company which makes a part of the same line, and is to act in it, must be formed and arranged in the same manner.

The companies will draw up as follows from right to left:....grenadiers;....1st captain and colonel; fourth captain and major's;....third captain and lieutenant-colonel;....fifth and second captain;....light company.....The four eldest captains are on the right of the grand divisions;....officers commanding companies or platoons, are all on the right of the front rank of their respective ones.

The eight regiment companies will compose four grand divisions;....eight companies or platoons,.... sixteen sub-divisions,.....thirty-two sections, when sufficiently strong to be so divided, otherwise twenty-four, for the purpose of march.....The regiment

Divisions. on a war establishment, may be divided into right and left battalions, each taking a regiment colour and observing the same line of duty as the regiment; when so divided, each company will be formed into two platoons.—If the ten companies are with the regiment they may then, for the purpose of firing or deploying, be divided into five grand divisions from right to left.

The regiment companies should be numbered from right to left, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.... The subdivisions 1, 2, of each;.... the sections 1, 2, 3, 4, of each;.... the files of companies will also be numbered separately in the same manner, and with the addition of those distinctions;.... These several appellations will be preserved whether faced to front or rear.

companies
equalized.

The companies should at all times be equalized in point of numbers, when the regiment is formed for field movement; and could the regiments of a line also be equalized, the greatest advantages would arise; but though from the different strengths of regiments this cannot take place, yet the first requisite always should, and is indispensable.

Formation
of the
regiment
at close
order.

When the regiment is at close order, the ranks are at one pace, except the fourth or supernumerary rank, which has three paces.

All the field officers and the adjutant are mounted.

The commanding officer is the only officer advanced in front, for the general purpose of exercise when the regiment is single; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

The lieutenant-colonel is behind the colours, six paces from the rear rank.

The major and adjutant are six paces in the rear of the third and sixth companies.

One officer is on the right of the front rank of each company or platoon, and one on the left of the regiment; all these are covered in the rear rank by their respective serjeants; and the remaining officers and serjeants are in a fourth or supernumerary rank behind their companies.....It is to be observed, that there are no coverers in the centre rank to the officers or colours.

The colours are placed between the fourth and fifth regiment companies, both in the front rank, and each covered by a non-commissioned officer, or steady man in the rear rank....One serjeant is in the front rank betwixt the colours; he is covered by a second serjeant in the rear rank, and by a third in the supernumerary rank....The sole business of these three serjeants is, when the regiment moves in line, to advance and direct the march as hereafter mentioned. The place of the first of those serjeants, when they do move out, is preserved by a named officer or serjeant, who moves up from the supernumerary rank for that purpose.

The fourth rank is at three paces distance when halted, or marching in line.....When marching in column, it must close up to the distance of the other ranks....The essential use of the fourth rank, is to keep the others closed up to the front during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; on this important service, too many officers and non-commissioned officers cannot be employed.

Use of the fourth or supernumerary rank.

The pioneers are assembled behind the centre, formed two deep, and nine paces from the third rank.

The drummers of the eight regiment companies are assembled in two divisions, six paces behind the third rank of their second and seventh companies....The grenadier and light company drummers, and fifers are six paces behind their respective companies,

The music are three paces behind the pioneers in a single rank, and at all times, as well as the drummers and pioneers, are formed at loose files, only occupying no more space than is necessary.

The staff of chaplain, surgeon, quarter-master, and surgeon's mate, are three paces behind the music.

Officers. In general, officers remain posted with their proper companies; but commanding officers will occasionally make such changes as they may find necessary.

Replacing serjeants. Whenever the officers move out of the front rank, in parade, marching in column, wheeling into line, or otherwise, their places are taken by their serjeant coverers, and preserved until the officers again resume them.

When the line is halted, and especially during the firings when engaged, the serjeant coverers fall back into the fourth rank, and observe their platoons.

§ 64....*When the Regiment takes Open Order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order. { At this command....the flank men on the right of the rear ranks of each company step briskly back to mark the ground on which each rank respectively is to halt. They face to the right, and cover as pivots, being regulated and dressed by the adjutant or serjeant-major on the right....Every other individual remains ready to move.

March. { At this command....the flank dressers face to the front, and the whole move as follows:

The rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dressing by the right the instant it arrives on the ground.

The officers in the front rank, as also the colours, move out three paces.....Those in the rear, together with the music, move through the intervals left open by the front rank officers, and divide themselves, viz. the captains covering the second file from the right, the lieutenants the second file from the left; and the ensigns opposite the centre of their respective companies

The music form between the colours, and the front rank.

The serjeant coverers move up to the front rank, to preserve the intervals left by the officers.

The pioneers fall back to six paces distance behind the centre of the rear rank.

The drummers take the same distance behind their divisions.

The major moves on the right of the line of officers....The adjutant to the left of the front rank.

The staff place themselves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, viz. chaplain, surgeon, quarter-master and surgeon's mate.

The lieutenant-colonel, and the colonel (dismounted), advance before the colours, two and four paces.

The whole being arrived at their several posts....Halt....Dress to the right....and the regiment remains formed in parade, in the order in which they would receive a superior officer.

When the regiment is reviewed singly, then in order to make more show....the division of drummers may be moved up, and formed two deep on each flank of the line....the pioneers may form two deep on the right of the drummers of the right....and the staff may form on the right of the whole.

§ 65....*When the Regiment resumes Close Order.*

[The lieutenant-colonel, officers, colours, staff, music, face to the right.

The drummers and pioneers (if on the flanks) face to the centre.

The serjeants (if in the front rank) face to the right.

*Rear Ranks
take*

Close Order.

March.

The rear ranks close within one pace, moving up one and two paces, and then halting.

The music marches through the centre interval.

The serjeants, drummers, pioneers, &c. &c. resume their places, each as in the original formation of the regiment in close order.

The officers move through and into their respective intervals, and each individual arrives, and places himself properly at his post in close order.

Posting of
Officers.

On particular occasions, and when necessary, officers commanding platoons, who in line are on the right of their platoons, shift to the left to conduct the heads of files, or the pivot flanks of their divisions in column or echelon.

Colours.

When the regiment wheels by companies or subdivisions to either flank into column; both colours and the file of directing serjeants always wheel to the proper front, and place themselves behind the third file from the new pivot.

Colour
reserve.

There is no separate colour reserve; the pioneers, music, &c. sufficiently strengthen the centre; but in the firings the two files on each side of the colours may be ordered to reserve their fire.

The constant order of the light company when formed in line, and united with the regiment, is at the same close files as the regiment. Their extended order is an occasional exception.

Light
Company.

When the light company is detached, and the grenadier company remains, it will be undivided on one flank of its regiment in line: but when the regiment is single, it is permitted to be occasionally divided on each flank.

Grena-
diers.

When the grenadier or light companies are detached, and make no part of the line, they may be formed two deep, if it is thought proper.

With a very few obvious alterations, these general rules take place when a company or regiment is permitted or ordered to form two ranks....which on a low establishment, may often be done for the purpose of exercise and movement on a more considerable front; they generally apply, whether the companies are strong or weak, and whether a greater or lesser number of companies compose the regiment.


GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES

PREPARATORY TO THE

MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

§ 74....*Of Commands.*

ALL words of command, and particularly the words HALT or MARCH, must be given short, quick and loud, so as to be caught and repeated from right to left of the line, or from front to rear of a column, in the shortest time possible.



All alterations, in carrying ARMS; change of PACE; WHEELING; FACING; OBLIQUING; HALTING; MARCHING; and in general every operation of the regiment, whether in line or column, which ought to be executed by the whole regiment at the same instant, are made by each in consequence of one word from the commander of each: but there are also many occasions in column, and in forming line, where the leaders of divisions repeat, or give the words of *March, Wheel, Halt, Front, Dress, &c.* to their several divisions, as is necessary.

Every officer must be accustomed to give his words of command, even to the smallest bodies, in the full extent of his voice, and in a sharp tone: by such bodies he must not only be heard, but by the leaders of others who are dependant on his motions. The justness of execution, and the confidence of the soldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner in which every officer of rank gives his orders.—An officer who cannot thoroughly discipline and exercise the body entrusted to his command is not fit in time of service to lead it to the enemy; he cannot be cool and collected in time of danger; he cannot profit of circumstances from an inability to direct others; the fate of many depends on his ill or well acquitting himself of his duty. It is not sufficient to advance with bravery; it is requisite to have that degree of intelligence, which should distinguish every officer according to his station; nor will soldiers ever act with spirit and animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of those who conduct them.

In the midst of surrounding noises, the eyes and the ear of the soldier should be attentive only to his own immediate officer; the loudness of whose commands, instead of creating confusion, reconcile to the hurry of action.

On all occasions when words of command are not heard, if the directing body has made a change of situation, the rest of the body will conform to it, as soon as the intelligence of the officer has pointed out what is meant to be done; and the eye will often shew the propriety and moment of movement, when the ear has not received the explanatory command.

The field officers and the adjutant of the regiment are at all times mounted.—In order the more readily to give ground in movements, speedily to correct mistakes, to circulate orders, to dress pivots, when they ought to cover in column in a straight line, and especially to take care when the column halts, that they are most speedily adjusted before wheeling up into line.—These operations no dismounted officer can effectually perform, nor in that situation can he see the faults, or give the aids which his duty requires.

§ 75....*Of Distance of Files.*

Except in the instruction of recruits and squads, on some occasions of regimental parade or inspection, and in the peculiar exercise of the light company, open files are not to be used, and at all times the regiment or its most minute parts are to form, move, and act at CLOSE FILES, so that each soldier when in his true position under arms, shouldered, and in rank, must just feel with his elbow the touch of his neighbour with whom he dresses; nor in any situation of movement in front, must he ever relinquish such touch, which becomes in action the principal direction for the preservation of his order, and each file as connected with its two neighbouring ones must consider itself a complete body so arranged for the purpose of attack, or effectual defence.

It cannot be doubted, when a regiment arrives at its object of attack at *CLOSE FILES*, that both its impulse and quantity of fire in the same extent of front is greater than when the files are more open; and should crowding be apprehended, it is at all times more eligible to have a division obliged to fall out of the line and double, than to have openings in it, where the enemy must certainly penetrate.

The perfect and correct march of a regiment or line formed at *OPEN FILES* seems hardly attainable, because its principal guidance, the touch of the files, does not exist; each man is necessarily employed to preserve a required distance from his neighbour, he is obliged for that purpose to turn his head; this distorts his body, and gives him a direction contrary to the perpendicular line he should march on; a constant opening and closing takes place, and the whole move loose and unconnected. If this must necessarily happen in a single regiment, the influence on a line may be easily imagined, and also the condition in which it will arrive near an enemy; who if he is formed at *CLOSE FILES*, if his dressing and line are chiefly determined by the touch; if the eyes alone are glanced towards the centre of regiments; if the figure of each individual is full to the front; if the whole move square along their just lines without crowding at an uniform and cadenced pace, which habit alone, unchecked by false and adventitious aids has given:—He at every instant of movement or attack will be firm, united and animated with that sense of his own superiority which perfect order and due consistency will always give.

§ 76....*Of Distances of Ranks.*

There are two distances of ranks, *Open* and *Close*.
—When open they are two paces asunder.—When

close they are one pace.—When the body is halted and to fire they are still closer locked up.

Close ranks or order is the constant and habitual order at which troops are at all times formed and move.—*Open* ranks or order, is only an occasional exception, made in the situation of parade.

The distances of files and ranks relate to the trained soldier, but in course of his tuition he must be much exercised at open files and ranks to acquire independence and command of his limbs and body.

§ 77....*Depth of Formation.*

The fundamental order of the infantry, in which they should always form and act, and for which all their various operations and movements are calculated, is in *three ranks* :—The formation in *two ranks* is to be regarded as an occasional exception that may be made from it, where an extended and covered front is to be occupied, or where an irregular enemy who deals only in fire is to be opposed.—But from the present establishment of our regiments, as laid down by the baron Stuben, the regiment always form and manœuvre in *two ranks*, which give a more extent of front in their operations, and should not be lost sight of.

The formation in two ranks, and at open files, is calculated only for light troops in the attack and pursuit of a timid enemy, but not for making an impression on an opposite regular line, which vigorously assails, or resists.—No general could manage a considerable army if formed and extended in this manner.—The great science and object of movement being to act with superiority on chosen points; it is never the intention of an able commander to

have all his men at the same time in action; he means by skill and manœuvre to attack a partial part and to bring the many to act against the few; this cannot be accomplished by any body at *open* files, and *two deep*.—A line formed in this manner would never be brought to make or stand an attack with bayonets, nor could it have any prospect of resisting the charge of a determined cavalry.—In no service is the fire and consistency of the third rank given up; it serves to fill up the vacancies made in the others in action, without it the regiment would soon be in a single rank.

§ 78.....*Music and Drums.*

The use of MUSIC or DRUMS to regulate the march is incompatible with the just and combined movements of any considerable body, and should not be allowed, it giving a false aid to the very smallest. They never persevere in the ordered time, or in any other, they are constantly changing measure, creating noise, deranging the equality of step, and counteract the very end they are supposed to promote. The order and cadenced MARCH can be acquired and preserved from the eye and habit alone, and troops must by great practice be so steadied as to be able to maintain it, even though drums, music, or other circumstances, should be offering a different marked time.—On occasions of parade and show, and when troops are halted, they are properly used, and when circumstances do not forbid it, may be sometimes permitted as inspiring in column of march, when unity of step is not so critically required. But in all movements of manœuvre whatever, and as at any time directing the cadence of the step, or in the instruction of the recruit, officer or regiment, they should not be heard.

§ 79....*The March.*

1. All military movements are intended to be made with the greatest quickness, that is consistent with order, regularity, and without hurry or fatigue to the troops. The uniformity of position, cadence, and length of step produce that equality and freedom of march, on which every thing depends, and to which the soldier must be carefully trained, nor suffered to join the regiment until he is thoroughly perfected in this most essential duty.

General intention.

2. The different degrees of march have been already detailed in the first and second parts, and to these must the soldier be trained and accustomed without drum, or music, and by habit alone taught to acquire the given times, and length. To the equal and unvaried cadence and length of step thus attained, can troops alone trust for the preservation of their line in advancing upon an enemy, when dust, the smoke of artillery, rain, fog, and many other local circumstances, make it impossible to depend on distant points, the uncertain time given by timid musicians, or any other adventitious help.

Degrees of march.

3. A company or division may occasionally run, a regiment may sometimes march quick, but the hurrying of a large column, or of a body moving in front, will certainly produce confusion and disorder. It is never to be risked when an enemy is in presence and to be encountered; though it may sometimes be necessary where a post or situation is to be seized.

4. The use of the side or closing step has been already mentioned in § 43. If more than one platoon is to close, at the words, CLOSE—MARCH—HALT, &c. the closing body proceeds as directed § 14. 43. If the body which is to close is truly formed, and has no false openings in it which are to be corrected, but that the whole is meant to be shifted

Side step.

to a named flank; the word from the commanding officer puts in march, and halts the whole.—But if the intention is to correct improper intervals between platoons or files, the word from the commanding officer puts the whole that are to close in march towards the ordered hand; and each platoon officer separately and successively gives the word *Halt* at the proper instant that his platoon has closed to that hand; this he is the better enabled to do from being himself out of the rank, and facing his platoon.

Halts.

5. All halts are made to the point to which the troops while in the march are looking; by bringing up the rear foot to the advanced one, so as to finish the step which is taking when the command is given; and after which no dressing or movement whatever is to be made, until a separate order directs it.

Oblique march.

6. The oblique march enables a body to preserve its parallel direction, and at the same time to gain ground to the flank, as well as to the front, without filing or opening out.—It is particularly necessary for the regiment in line, when intervals are to be corrected, and the forming up and doubling of its divisions.—With a body of any extent it is a very nice operation to execute.—Each regiment in line obliques without turning eyes from its own centre.—One degree of obliquing only (under the angle of 25 degrees,) is to be required from an extended front of troops, and even in that it is exceeding difficult to preserve them: but when the regiment or smaller body is forming up, they will often be obliged in doubling, especially when in movement to oblique more or less sharply, according to circumstances. § 8. 35. 55.

Fig. 1.

§ 80.....*Wheeling.*

Wheeling in general.

1. A single rank or division might at all times wheel to a *halted flank*, without alteration of the

time at which it is then marching ; by the outward wheeling man preserving the usual length of step, and the others properly shortening theirs to remain dressed with him: The same might take place in column, whose divisions were equal, and when the wheel is under 1-6th of the circle. But when it exceeds that portion, it becomes necessary in order to clear the ground, prevent false distances, and a lengthening out ; that the divisions successively make their wheels to their *halted flank* at a pace considerably quicker, than what the body of the column is moving at.

2. Wheels of division of a regiment or line, are made on a halted pivot, or on a moveable pivot..... When on a HALTED pivot they are made from line into column, or from column into line ; and also generally by the column of manœuvre or march in movement, when the front of it is considerable, and when the wheel by which its direction is to be changed approaches to or exceeds the quarter circle..... When on a MOVEABLE pivot, they are only used and occasionally ordered in the column of march, when its front is small, and that its path is winding, and changeable ; in that case both flanks are moveable and describe concentric circles round a point which is removed a few paces from what would otherwise be the standing flank.

Wheels made on halted or moveable pivots.

Fig. 4. B.

3. The various circumstances attending the wheels on the HALTED pivot have been detailed in the first and second parts.....Although the pause made after the *Halt, Dress*, gives time in large fronts, for exact dressing, yet in small ones where that pause is short, there is no time for such exactness, the attention to, and preservation of the true distance, being then the material object.....Whenever the wheel made is less than the quarter circle, the pause after the wheel will be considerable ; should the wheel be greater

On a halted pivot.

Fig. 4. B.

than the quarter circle it must be accelerated, otherwise more than one division will be arrived and arrested at the pivot point....Should a column be marching in quick time, it is evident that its wheels must be in proportion quickened to disengage in time the pivot point, for each successive division.

On a moveable pivot.

4. When the column of sections, sub-divisions, or companies, is obliged frequently to change its direction of march, and that it is permitted to do it on the **MOVEABLE** pivot (§ 23. 52.) instead of a halted pivot....If the pivot leader describes the smaller circle of the wheel, he leaves the point on which he marched, and where the old and new directions intersect, close to his own hand wheeled to....When he describes the greater circle, he leaves such point wide from his own wheeling hand....In both cases the more considerable the sweep he makes from the old to the new direction, the easier, and more gradually can the other flank conform, and therefore when this mode is made use of, the column is supposed to have sufficient room on its flanks to allow of the necessary operations : for if both flanks cannot be kept in progressive movement during the change of direction, the wheels cannot be thus made, but must be executed quick, and on *fixed* pivots, otherwise the ground would not be clear for the succeeding divisions, and they would stop each other and interfere....In this manner will the column on a small front follow the windings of a route, be conducted through an open wood, or trace out the irregular edge of a height, which it is to occupy ; and indeed on all common occasions of route marching, where perfect correctness is not required, it will thus change into new directions.

Fig. 4. B.

Wheel of divisions backward.

5. Wheels of divisions may be made either forward or backward....In general (and always in progressive movement), they are made forward, but

particular occasions require that they should be made **BACKWARD**, on the pivot flank....In this manner may the line wheel into open column of platoons, sub-divisions, or sections: the flank sides of the square, or oblong may thus wheel into column, when the body is to be put in march; the line already formed may be thus prolonged when necessary to either flank, as the pivots are thus preserved: it is also advantageously used in marching off parades, where guards are of different strengths, and is often essentially necessary in narrow grounds..... By this means although battalions should be unequal, either in the same regiment, or in a line, yet all their pivot flanks will after the wheel remain truly dressed; of course the distances will be just, the line of marching accurately preserved, and each division by afterwards wheeling up will exactly occupy the identical ground it quitted.....Whereas in wheeling **FORWARD** from line into open column, even if the divisions are of equal strength, the pivots and distances after the wheel will not be true, because the different sizes of men, and the least over or under wheel of any one division will derange them, which in practice will infallibly happen.....But if the divisions are of unequal strength, independant of the pivots necessarily not covering, the distances which the column marches off at, must be all changed during the march, otherwise when the column is to wheel up, and form, strong divisions would have to wheel into the space, which the weaker ones had left, and *vice versa*; the consequence and confusion thence arising is obvious.

Fig. 18. B.

Fig. 18. A.

6. To prevent therefore such inconveniences it must be regarded as a rule almost general.....That all wheels by companies or smaller divisions from regiment or line (when halted) into open column should be made **BACKWARD**, and all wheels from

General rule.

open column into line FORWARD: The only necessary exceptions seem to be in some cases in narrow grounds where there is not room for such wheels..... If the division does not exceed 16 or 18 file, it may readily wheel back without facing about; but if the division is stronger and the ground uneven, it must *Face about—Wheel—and then Halt, front.*

When wheels of divisions are made backwards or forwards.

7. In wheeling BACKWARD from line into column, when the right is to be in front, the wheel is made ON the left; and when the left is to be in front, the wheel is made ON the right.....In wheeling FORWARD the standing flank man faces outward from his division.....In wheeling BACKWARD, he faces inward to his division.....In wheeling FORWARD the proper pivot flank of the column is the wheeling one: In wheeling BACKWARD, the pivot flank is the standing one, and remaining fixed, the divisions however unequal will always cover on that hand, which will not be the case if the wheel is made forward..... In wheeling FORWARD, the command is TO THE RIGHT, (or) TO THE LEFT, WHEEL: In wheeling BACKWARD, the command is ON THE RIGHT, (or) ON THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL.

Circumstances in wheeling.

8. As the circumference of the quarter circle which a division describes in its wheel, is one half more, (nearly) than its front; it is necessary that in open column, it should, in the time that it takes to march over a space equal to the extent of its front, not only complete the wheel of the quarter circle, but be enabled to move on at its just distance from its preceding division, and not to stop that which succeeds it. The wheel must therefore be quickened, or the step lengthened (or part of both applied) in proportion to the general march.

Number of files in a division, each occupying 22 inches.	5.	10.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18	20.	30.	40.	50.	100.
Front of divisions in ordinary paces of 30 inches.	p.in. 3.20	7.10	8.24	10.8	11.	11.22	13.6	14.20	22.	29.10	36.20	73.10

9. A division consisting of 10 files, and each occupying 22 inches, will at paces of 30 inches take 7 paces 10 inches for its front.....Now 75 steps in a minute being the ordinary time, and 120 the wheeling time, $75 : 120 :: 7\frac{1}{3} : 11\frac{2}{3}$, nearly the number of wheeling paces of 30 inches each, which the wheeling man can take while the following division is making its $7\frac{1}{3}$ ordinary paces in front, and 11 of which exactly completes the quarter circle : but if each of these 11 paces is lengthened with 3 inches, then the wheel will be completed in 10 steps, and a pause of one pace and 2-3ds of a pace, or 5-6ths of a second of time, will be reserved for the *Halt*, *Dress*, and *March* of the regiment after it has at 10 long paces of 33 inches completed the wheel.....This pause will increase or diminish according to the greater or lesser extent of the wheeling body, and in the above proportions of time and step, it is 1-7th of the time employed by such body in wheeling the quarter circle....This allowance which is barely sufficient in a division of 10 files, and which cannot well be increased, either by length of step, or quickness of time, shews how pointed and quick the commands must be, not to occasion a loss of ground to each successive division at the points of wheeling.

10. It appears that the front of any division or body, is in ordinary paces of 30 inches, nearly 3-4ths of the number of files of which it is composed..... That the circumference of the quarter circle which it describes is in wheeling paces of 33 inches, the same as the number of files of which it is composed. That the number of files being once ascertained in

Necessa-
ry recol-
lections.

each division, the officer commanding it must on all occasions recollect the number of paces that are equal to his front ; also the number of wheeling paces which the flank man must take to complete the quarter-circle ; also the spare time, which he has to regulate the *Halt, March* of his division after wheeling.

Wheel- ing paces required to de- scribe	{	The 6th of the circle, or an angle of 60° are $\frac{2}{3}$	}	of the num- ber of files of which the front consists.
		The 8th, - - - - - 45° — $\frac{1}{2}$		
		The 16th, - - - - - $22\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ — $\frac{1}{4}$		
		The 32d, - - - - - $11\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ — $\frac{1}{8}$		

11. The field officers and adjutants must always recollect the number of paces the front of the regiment and its battalion occupy, in order to take up ground exactly in all formations.

§ 81....*Movements.*

1. Every movement must be divided into its distinct parts, and each part executed by its explanatory and separate words of command.

2. Alterations of position in considerable bodies should begin from a previous halt ; except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or encreasing or diminishing their front which may be done while in motion.

3. The exercise of small bodies when within the command of one voice appears more showy from the keeping such bodies constantly in motion, and by changing from one manœuvre to another while on the march.—But such movements and the formations made from them must be on accidental points, and however brilliant in regimental practice, and review appearance, where the lesson of the day has been previously arranged, they can only be considered as occasional exceptions not applicable to large bodies

where hurry must be avoided, and where concert, and relative position are indispensable.

4. As the principle of moving, forming and dressing upon given and determined points is just, all quick alterations of position of a considerable body, attempted while on the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however short) are false and defective, the effects of which though not so apparent in a single regiment would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.—A pause between each change of situation so essentially necessary to the movements of great bodies, should seldom be omitted in those of small ones ; squareness of dressing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative position of the whole, are thereby ascertained.—Such alterations of situation made from the halt, may when necessary succeed each other quickly ; and in many cases no unnecessary time need be taken up in scrupulous dressing, but every one may be instantly apprized of the following movement, which circumstances require.

§ 82....*Points of March.*

1. Every leader of a body which is to move directly forward in front, must take care to conduct it in a line truly perpendicular to that front.—To march straight on one object only with certainty and without wavering, is not to be depended on ; two objects therefore placed and preserved during the march in the same straight line are necessary for the purposes of correct movement, when the intent is truly to prolong a given line.

2. Two objects will therefore in general be prepared for the direction of any considerable body : But should a leader, either in file or in front, have only one marked point of march ascertained to him,

he will himself instantly look out for his small intermediate points, which are always to be found, which he will from time to time renew, and which are to preserve and determine the accuracy of his movement towards the more distant point. (See § 42.)

§ 83....*The Alignement.*

To march or form in the *ALIGNEMENT*, is to make troops march, or form in any part of the straight line which joins two given points.—On the justness and observance of this line, depends the accuracy of the most essential movements and formations, and therefore every relative help must be applied to ensure it.

2. In formations of defence the lines occupied may be curved, and following the advantages of the ground, but in those of attack, the lines must be straight, otherwise the troops in advancing must inevitably fall into confusion.

Fig. 12.

3. When troops are to form in a straight line, two necessary points in it must always be previously ascertained.—One the point of *APPUI* (A. a. a.) at which one flank of the body, whether small or great, is to be placed, and the other point of *FORMATION* or *DRESSING* (D.) on which the front of the body is directed.

Fig. 12.

4. When regiments, or battalions of regiments come up successively into line, the outward flank of the last formed and halted body is always considered as the point of *APPUI* (a. a.) or support of the succeeding one, and in this manner is the general line prolonged from each successive point of *Appui*, towards the given distant point of formation (D.) The looking and lining of the soldier in forming is always towards the point of *Appui*, and the correction of dressing is

always from that point towards the opposite hand.— This great principle is to be observed, from the smallest body to the most considerable corps, and regulates the formation of the battalion, the regiment, and the line.

§ 34..... *Points of Formation.*

1. In the movements of a single regiment, and in the taking up of a new position, it may not seem material whether a flank is placed a few yards to the one hand or other, or whether the line formed on, is exactly directed on any certain point.—But when a regiment makes a part of a more considerable body, then all its position being relative to other regiments and to given points, if its formations are not accurate and just, it will create general confusion and give false directions and distances to those whose situation must be determined by it. The necessity therefore of every single regiment being accustomed to make its changes of position, and formations on determined points, is apparent, and is an object which commanding officers must always hold in view, and have their adjutants and others prepared and instructed accordingly,

Necessity of formations made on given points.

2. The line on which troops in column move, or are successively to form, is taken up to any extent by the prolongation of an original short and given BASE, established where they first begin to enter, or form on that line, the direction of which is determined by the views of the commander, and which can seldom fail to point on some distant and distinct object, that will serve to correct the position of the different persons who successively as their separate bodies require it, prolong the line from the several points already established in it.—In general therefore the point (A.) where a formation or entry into an aligne-

Base line, and method of prolonging it.

Fig. 13.

ment is to be made being marked by a fixed person, the commander will place a second (o.) 30 or 40 paces, without the first, exactly in the direction which he determines to give to his new line, and which will generally be on some distant object. These two persons will mark a base, which by adjutants (a. a. a.) or others successively aligning themselves backwards on the two first placed men, and on each other, may be prolonged to any required length, at the same time that the distant point (D.) serves for the commander who perhaps alone knows it to correct them upon.

Methods
of ascer-
taining
points of
movement
or forma-
tion.

Fig. 13.

3. Two original or base points (o. A.) which are to be prolonged or formed upon, should not be too close together, otherwise the direction of the line must be indistinct, and the farther they are asunder the better can a line be taken upon them.—Where two points (o. A.) are to be given in a certain direction towards a distant one (D.) the innermost (A.) should be first determined, and the outer one (o.) is immediately and easily taken over the innermost, and the distant one (D.) of correction.—Should the outer one (o.) be first taken, time is lost in directing the shifting of the inner one (A.) before it is truly lined on the more distant point (D.); besides the point (A.) in many changes of position of a line or column is naturally the first ascertained (being the pivot flank of a company on which the change is to be made, or the point of march towards which the column is moving) and from thence the distant point (D.) is then taken, which gives the new direction, and depends on the eye and intention of the commander; the easy ascertaining of (o.) follows of course.—Or the commander after ascertaining (A.) will fix (o.) *ad libitum*, and find out (D.) if such object presents itself in the prolongation of the other two.—At any rate (A.) is the point first to be determined on,

4. When the persons who prolong a line are on horseback, the head of the horse of each standing perpendicular to that line is the object, and when they dismount their own breast is the object, which the shoulders of the leaders of the divisions of a column in march, rase in passing, and which is in the line of the head of the horse.—It is also the breast of such other men, as may be posted on foot, which the several leaders in like manner rase, as they successively arrive at them.

Position
of pro-
longers of
lines.

Although the leaders of the two first divisions of a column march on the persons placed in the line, yet if its direction happens to be on some remarkable object, they should as soon as possible discover it, or be shewn it as the general correction of the march.

5. When a number of officers or serjeants (s. s. s. Fig. 14. s.) are to be individually, successively, and separately advanced in order to give a direction on which pivots of the divisions of a column are to stand ; or flanks of divisions which successively come into line are to be halted, or on which the dressing of a regiment is to be corrected.—Two such persons will be truly, and previously placed, and the others the more exactly to attain a perfect line, instead of attempting at once to dress by each others breasts, will first cover in FILE with precision at their required distances, and then carefully front as directed, before their several divisions move up to them.—Were such persons to endeavor to take up their ground at first, by dressing in a line ; the least inclination backward or forward of the body, and the certainty of the shoulders turning, when the eyes are directed to a flank, would make it a difficult operation : But in FILE when each places himself square on the line, covering the necks of those before him, the inclination of the body backward or forward does

Method of
prolong-
ing a line
by officers
or ser-
jeants.

not affect the direction, and the end proposed is at once attained.

Fig. 12. 6. In successive forming of divisions into line, as from close column, from echelon, &c. the first division (A. a.) that arrives in, and is truly formed on it may be considered as the *BASE* which is constantly prolonged for the others; the men as they come up endeavor to line well on the part already formed, and the officer corrects that lining on the distant point in the true prolongation which is prepared for him by his adjutants or other persons, just beyond where the flank of his regiment is to extent, and thus regiment after regiment arrive in line.

7. The ascertaining of the points necessary for the movements and formations of the regiment is the particular business of the adjutant in the field; and in this exercise he may be assisted by two detached persons placed behind each flank of the regiment, who are properly trained, quickly to take up such line as he shall give them; but for this purpose they are not to run out before their aid is wanted, nor are they to make any unnecessary bustle, and when the operation for which they were sent out is accomplished, they will immediately return behind their proper flank.

§ 85....*Dressing*.

1. In *DRESSING* when halted, a small turn of the head is necessary, and is allowed in order to facilitate it.—When the word *Dress* is alone given, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking, and when eyes are at the same time to be turned to a new point in order to dress, it should be expressed by the addition of *right*, *centre*, or *left*. But whenever the word *Halt, Dress*, is given by an

officer to his division, it always implies that the men are looking, or are to look to such officer, who is then on the flank of the *Appui*.

2. All *DRESSING* is to be made with as much alacrity of officer and soldier as possible, and the dresser of each body as he accomplishes the operation will give a caution *Front*, that heads may then be replaced, and remain square to the front.—If the body to be dressed is extensive, as that of a regiment or parade, the dresser must justly place one division before he proceeds on that which is beyond it.

3. On all occasions without exception of *FORMING* and *DRESSING* in line, it must be remembered that the soldiers come into line with their eyes directed to the general point of *Appui* (A.) where the leading flank is to rest, and of course towards whatever part of a line is nearer that point than themselves, which may be already formed before them, and is to them a direction.—But the officer in dressing (without exception) is placed on that flank of his division or body towards which the men's eyes are turned, and from thence he makes his corrections of the other flank on the distant point (D.) which is previously marked by the adjutant, or some other person placed in the true general line ; therefore on all occasions by the men's lining themselves to one hand, and the officers correcting to the other, the most perfect line may be obtained.—Should it be neglected to give or prepare such points of correction, the dressing of the line would be irregular, and slow, and depend entirely on the men taking it up from each other, and from the first formed flank, which is an imperfect method, and can never produce a just line, capable of marching forward in due order.—The having such points quickly and successively prepared the instant before they are wanted,

General
attentions
of dress-
ing in all
forma-
tions.

Fig. 15.

and without any noise, or apparent bustle, so that no delay may be made in the operations of the regiment or line, is one of the great attentions of the commanding officer and adjutant, to which also the intelligence of the trained persons placed behind the flanks will much contribute.

Points necessary to be given in movements of formations.
Fig. 13.

4. If the open column is to enter on an alignment, there must be three prepared points ; one (A) where it enters, and which serves as a future point of correction in march, and in forming ; and two more (a. D.) always advanced before it.

Fig. 16.

5. If the close column is to form in line on a flank division, it must have a point (D.) of march and correction beyond the other flank, and intermediate small points must also be taken by the leader of the front division, in order to preserve its direction of movement. If it forms on a central division, it must then have a point of correction to each flank (D. D.) and march justly on intermediate ones.

Fig. 12.15.

6. If a regiment takes a new position by the echelon march, there must be a point (A.) given where its leading flank enters the line and forms on it, and another (D.) just beyond its extreme flank on which the dressing of each division is corrected.

Fig. 14.

7. If the regiment changes position to a flank, by the filing of divisions, the prolongation of two points (A. o.) given in front of the pivot flank of its leading division will determine the direction of the other pivots.—If the change is central, one central point (a.) and one (o. o.) on each side of it being prolonged will determine in like manner the line of the other pivots.

8. The commander will himself generally have a distant point, on which he will determine those regiment points, and which will serve him as his point to correct the whole. Independent therefore of the

partial helps which advanced serjeants may give to the formation and dressing of their several divisions, it may be observed with respect to one or more regiments, that in marching in front, or in column, *two* advanced points and *one* rear point are necessary : and in successive formations into line, besides its point of *Appui* which each body moves up to *one* distant point taken in the determined direction, and beyond where the regiment is to extend, is essential for the correction of its dressing, and in this line is every division exactly brought up and dressed.

OPEN COLUMN.

1. All columns are supposed formed from line for the convenience of movement, and for the purpose of again extending into line.—Every column of march or manœuvre must be formed by a regular succession of the divisions from right to left of the line, or of such of its parts as compose the column, for whatever is the relative position of a body in line, such ought it to be in column : and where several connected columns are formed, the same flanks of each should be in front, but whether Rights or Lefts will depend on circumstances.—Columns formed from the centre of regiments or lines, should seldom be made, are partial, and not adapted as the others are to movements and formations in all situations.

Formation
of co-
lums.

2. The chief objects of the open column are, facility of movement ; the quick formation of the line to the flank, and the change of situation in the shortest lines from one position to another. It is named the column of march or *ROUTE*, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers, are not so much kept on the stretch.—It is

Columns
of march
and ma-
nœuvre.

named the column of MANOEUVRE, when being within reach of the enemy the greatest exactness is required in order to its speedy formation at any instant into line, during its transition from one position to another.

Front and
extent of
column.

3. Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be composed of companies or sub-divisions.—For the purposes of movement they need not exceed 16 or 18 files, nor should they be under 6 files in front, when the formation is three deep, otherwise there will not be space to loosen the ranks, and the regiment will of course be lengthened out—An open column occupies the same extent of ground as when in line, minus the front of its leading division: But a body obliged to march any distance in file, will at least occupy one half more ground than it requires in line; such situation is therefore to be avoided.

Formation
of the
open co-
lumn from
line.

4. From line the column is formed, and marches to the front, flanks, rear, or in any intermediate oblique direction, with either its right or left in front.—In each case the regiment or line *WHEELS* the quarter circle by divisions to either flank and *HALTS*. The whole *MARCH*.—The leading division *wheels* into, or moves on, in the prescribed direction, and the rest follow in column.

5. The open column, or the column at half or quarter distance, may also be formed oblique or perpendicular to the line, on any given division; by the other divisions (according to which flank is ordered to lead) wheeling, filing, and placing themselves in front, and rear of the given one.

6. Columns of march or manœuvre will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank; and *vice versa*, when required to the left flank.



REGIMENT OPEN COLUMN.

1. In column divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank : To the left, when the right is in front : and to the right, when the left is in front. The *proper* pivot flank in column is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in their natural order, and to their proper front. The other may be called the *reverse* flank.

Dressing
in column.

Fig. 11.

2. In column rear ranks (if not ordered to be locked up) are one pace asunder.—When a considerable distance is to be marched, they may be opened half a pace more, but without increasing the distances of divisions, which remain such as are prescribed according to the object of the movement, and which are always taken from front rank, to front rank.

Distance
of ranks.

The post of commanding officers in column, is each near the flank of the leading division of his regiment.

4. Each division of which a column is composed is conducted by a leader placed on its pivot flank of the front rank which is his general post.—In a column of companies of platoons such leader is the platoon officer. In a column of sub-divisions the officer leads the head sub-division of his company ; and his covering serjeant in regiment the second. In a column of sections the platoon officer leads the head section of his company ; his serjeant the middle one ; and an officer or serjeant from the rear, the last one. When divisions are filing from column into a new position, their several leaders conduct their heads. When any considerable continuation of the march

Leading
officers.

is the object, and that pivot officers are permitted to be in front of their divisions, their flank post must be occupied by non-commissioned officers, who remain answerable under their direction for the preservation of the proper distances.

Music,
Drums,
&c.

5. In open column, the artillery, music, drummers, &c. of regiments wheel with and remain closed up to the rear of their respective divisions. In column at half or quarter distance, they may occasionally if their is space move in file, on the flank which is not the pivot one. Instead of being kept collected, they may in column of march be sent to their respective companies to remain in the rear of each : But on no occasion whatever is the assembling of them to be allowed to lengthen out, or interfere with the movements of the regiment or column, or to encrease the intervals betwixt regiments in column.

Fig. 18.

6. On all occasions of wheeling from line into open column (except where the narrowness of ground prevents it) the divisions WHEEL BACKWARDS on their pivot flanks. The advantage so great, and the necessity so evident of having the *pivots* remain covering each other truly, as well as having just distances preserved, is thereby secured, which will never be the case in *wheeling forward*, from the different strength of regiments in a line, and of companies or battalions in the same regiment. In wheeling backward if divisions do not exceed 16 or 18 file, they may readily WHEEL back without facing about, but if divisions are stronger and the ground uneven, they must FACE about—WHEEL—and then *Halt, front*.

Wheeling
forward
into line.

Fig. 10. B.

7. When an open column is to form in line to its proper front, the divisions will always WHEEL FORWARD on their pivots. But should it be meant to reverse the front, the PIVOTS themselves must then wheel forward, which will prevent any false distances

that unequal divisions would occasion, although the flanks they do wheel upon, may not then be in a regular line. Should the divisions of the column be of equal strength the front may then be reversed by wheeling back upon the pivots which will preserve the regularity of the alignment.

8. Platoons must be accustomed to wheel occasionally upon their CENTRE, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every shape which circumstances may require, but always in order, and by the decided commands of their officers.

Wheeling
on the
centre.

9. All marches of regiments are made in column of companies, or other divisions, never by files where it can possibly be avoided.—Filings are only applied to the internal movements and formations of the divisions of the regiment and in some changes of position, not to any considerable manœuvres of the entire regiment, or of greater bodies.

Filings.

10. All wheelings, and filings made from the halt, from line to form in column, or from column to form in line, are made at a quick step.

Wheeling
in column.

11. When the rear ranks close or open on the march, in the one case they will step nimbly up, in the other they will slacken their pace until the due distance is attained.—In both cases the front rank continues to proceed at its then rate of march.

Opening
or closing
of rear
ranks.

12. In an open column of manœuvre of one or more regiments, the divisions ought as much as possible to be equalized.—The whole must be put in march at the same instant, and the step preserved, equal as to time and length whether marching on level or inclined ground.—Every division must trace out the exact track which the leading one does; nor must any part make a partial alteration of pace. These circumstances observed which will preserve the justness of wheeling distances, and the covering of pivot flanks; and no embarrassments being

Peculiar
attentions
in the
open co-
lumn of
manœuvre.

allowed in the intervals of regiments, an exact line to the flank is at any instant procured, by the wheel of the quarter circle; and all closing in, unsteady shifting, and after dressing is avoided.

Fig. 30. B.
Counter-
march by
files.

13. The countermarch by files of the divisions of a column each on its own ground; changes a column that is standing with its right in front, into a column with its left in front, and thereby enables it to return along the ground it has gone over, and to take new positions without altering or inverting the proper front of the line (§ 53. 100.)

Fig. 31.
Counter-
march by
divisions.

14. The countermarch by divisions successively from the rear to the front, changes the leading flank of the regiment column, but allows it to continue its former direction of march, and is a previous manœuvre often necessary and required to enable a regiment to take up a relative position. (§ 101.)

All counter marches necessarily change the pivot flanks of columns.

Fig. 10. A.
Wheels
in column.

15. Open column of companies will in general wheel on a *fixed* pivot, except that in the continuation of a march, they have sufficient ground gradually to make their changes of direction on a moveable one, if so ordered.—Columns of subdivisions or sections will always wheel on a *moveable* pivot when it can be done.—Columns at half or quarter distance must also make their necessary wheels on a *moveable* pivot, otherwise a stop must ensue.

The front
of column
not to be
altered
when
marching
in an
alignement.

16. No doubling up, encreasing, or diminishing the front of the column must be made, after entering on a straight alignment, in order to form in line. Such operation when necessary should be performed, before the line of formation is entered on.

Fig. 10.

17. In whatever manner the leading division of a regiment column arrives in a straight alignment on which it is to form, a mounted officer always gives

the point where it enters.—And when arrived at its ground, that it halts and is to form, the commanding officer from that division corrects if necessary the pivot files on the fixed distant points, before the divisions wheel up into line.

18. Pivot officers of columns when marching in an alignment, must be steady on the flanks of their divisions, as they give the true wheeling distance, and covering of the pivots in their own persons: They must not look to or endeavor to correct the march of their divisions, that care must be left to serjeants, and other officers in the rear. The pivot files of men (that they also may be truly covered when halted), must be close to, but not touch or derange their leaders in the march.—The pivot files of the open or close column in march are always directed and conducted on the given points of march, whether the column is moving in a line on which it is to form, or whether it is moving up to a point where it is to change its direction; and the leading officer in column always leaves the object on which he has marched, or at which he wheels, close on his outward hand.

Pivot
officers.

Fig. 10.

19. When marching in a straight alignment there must never be more than one officer (or leader) on the pivot flank of each division, all others are either on the opposite flank, or in rear of the divisions.—Nor are such leaders then covered in the rear ranks by their serjeants, in order that they may the more easily see, and distinctly cover, each other in the given line.

Officers
and co-
lours in
the aligne-
ment.

The colours cover the 3d files of men from the pivot, and must be ready to move up, when the line is to be formed.

20. In marching in an alignment on advanced points, such points must be known and visible to the leader of the second as well as of the first division;

Officers
that con-
duct the
two lead-

ing divi-
ons of a
column
must not
be short
sighted.

because such second leader must preserve his first, and the given points in the true line, and on the accuracy of the position of those two leaders depends the covering of the rear ones.—Officers who have an indistinct sight, can never lead the two first divisions of a column marching in a straight alignment, and must therefore on such occasion be replaced by other persons, whose accurate vision enables them to preserve and prolong the just line which the whole are to follow.

Marching
in an
aligne-
ment.

21. All marching in the alignment must be made in ordinary time, and taken up before, or from the point where it is entered with precision, the pivot officers are then peculiarly answerable for distances, and exact covering of the flanks.—To march with accuracy in an alignment in quick time, so as at any instant to be ready to wheel up into line, and (without a considerable pause) to move on, is an operation hardly to be expected, and seldom to be required.

Wheeling
in line
from open
column.

22. When the column of companies halt to form : pivot flanks are in an instant corrected from the leading division by commanding officers of regiments. Leading officers move into the front of their platoons.—Their covering serjeants place themselves on the right of each if the wheel is to be the left ; or otherwise behind the pivot file if the wheel is to be to the right.—Pivot men of the front rank face square into the new direction.—The whole wheel up, and halt.—Officers dress the interior of their platoons, and then replace their serjeants who are now in the front rank.—If any farther dressing is necessary, it must be ordered and made by a mounted field officer.

Dressing
on pivots.

23. If the regiment after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dressed, the fault must be in the internal parts of the divisions : This must be immediately corrected (by each platoon

officer) on the pivot men, who on no account must move, or shift, but remain so many given or fixed points on whom the regiment is exactly lined.—Each platoon officer thus only dresses within his own platoon; if a more accurate dressing is required, it is afterwards given by a field officer.

24. In general the whole of a regiment will be halted on its ground, stand in column, and its pivots be adjusted, before it wheels up and forms: but if necessary, and where parts of it arrive in the line by *filings*, they may form successively as they come up.—If part of a regiment should therefore be ordered to wheel into line while the other divisions are not yet in it, the pivot men of those divisions (and not the officers) must cover on the formed part of the line before they wheel up.—And when several regiment columns changing position enter separately, and are to form in the same line, each may be successively wheeled up, if so ordered or intended, when its adjoining one has three or four of its divisions standing in column on the line.

Forming
in line.

Fig. 10. B.

25. When a point of entry is marked in a new alignment, the *pivot* flank of the leading division of a column is always directed on such point.—If the line is to be formed, and the head flank placed at such point of entry, the head division will rest its pivot on the line, and at a distance equal to its front from such point.—If the rear flank is to be at that point, the pivot of the rear division will halt at it. If the point is an intermediate one, a central division will halt at it.—The line will be formed by the wheeling up of divisions, when they are severally placed upon it.

26. On some occasions (as in passing lines, forming close columns, &c.) the platoons or divisions of a regiment in line are ordered to **FILE** to front, rear, or into column without first wheeling the quarter

Disengaging
heads of
files.

circle.—An explanatory caution being given, at the word for the regiment to *FACE*, the platoons face to the point directed, and at the same instant the three leading files of each throw themselves to the flank according as they are to move, so as to be disengaged from the last file of the preceding platoon. In this situation each leader is enabled at the word *March*, to move independant, without check, and on his proper point.

March in column.

27. The rear divisions of a regiment, or more considerable column in march, constantly follow every turning and twist which the head makes ; each successively changing its direction at whatever point the leading division may have so done.—When at any accidental moment the column is ordered to *HALT*, and *FORM* in line, the pivot men of platoons must remain steady where they are found at the word *HALT*, and the divisions will wheel up into what will probably be a curved, but a just line. If the march in column is again to be resumed, the line breaks backward, and the rear divisions at their ordered distances will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the head ; nor are the following divisions of a column ever to deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themselves to get into a straight line when the general direction is a winding one, until an express order is given for that purpose ; which can hardly ever be the case until the head of the column is halted with a determination to form the line in a straight direction.

March of the column through a wood, or in an embarrassed ground.

Fig. 19.

28. The march in column through a thin wood, or in ground where impediments frequently change the direction of its head, or along the winding of heights which are to be occupied, will be best made by sub-divisions, or by sections of five or six files in front. The *pivot* files will preserve exact distances from each other, choose their own ground, and wind as the trees or other impediments permit, along

a general direction: When the column *halts* and forms, the line will be a continued curve, which can afterwards be easily made straight, if circumstances require it. In such situations, at no time if it is possible should any of the *pivot* flank leaders be obliged to double or quit the continued line of march; but the other files may be (when impediments are to be passed) much opened or loosened from those pivots, who in the mean time moving free and preserving wheeling distances, are in a situation at every instant to *halt* and form in line, the others closing into them.

29. Should the march in a straight alignment be at any time interrupted by pools of water, or any other obstacle which is impassable, the march will be continued straight to that obstacle, the obstacle will be surrounded (and always if possible by deviating to the reverse flank so as to remain behind the line, and the same straight line will again on the other side be taken up by the pivots, at the point in it which a detached person has prepared. Allowance will be made, when the line is to form, for the breadth of such obstacle, by the doubling of as many divisions as will fill up the vacancy (when it can be done) which is thereby occasioned in the line; nor must any small interruptions in the line, that can possibly be surmounted, ever make the pivots deviate from the straight line, when the intention of forming on the line is evident and known to all.

Obstacles
in march
in an
align-
ment.

Fig. 20:

ASSEMBLY OF THE REGIMENT, AND GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES IN EX- ERCISE.

Assembly
of the re-
giment.

THE companies having been inspected by their officers on their particular parade should arrive and stand on the parade of the regiment in open column of companies, and with either right or left in front. The ground is given by whichever division first arrives on it, and the others arrange themselves in front or rear accordingly. In this situation are reports made to the commanding officer; companies equalized; music, drummers, pioneers, &c. assembled at their proper stations; all other individuals of the regiment placed; pivot files, and just wheeling distances corrected. The regiment is then formed in line by wheels of the quarter circle, and by word from the commanding officer; the colours are sent for and posted; and the whole are thus in readiness to move, by subdivision or company column.

March
to the
ground of
exercise.

The march to, and from the field in column, should be considered as one of the most material parts of exercise, and be made with attention, equality of step, just distances, and perfect order. The front of the march should be frequently encreased and diminished in the manner prescribed (§ 87.) and the regiment at different periods formed by wheels to the flank, to shew that distances have been duly preserved.

Exercise
by compa-
nies.

The exercise of the regiment must frequently be preceded by that of companies in detail, according to the instructions given in the second part. Therefore when the regiment is arrived on its ground, the officers will be assembled, and those commanding companies informed what particular parts (referring

for this purpose to the numbers marked in the exercise of the company), in what succession, and for what length of time, or how often each operation of the company is to be repeated.—The companies will then by a regular process be separated, by taking intervals in one line, or in two lines, so that each shall have a free space of 40 or 50 yards square. They will on that ground begin and finish in nearly the same instant of time, each of the ordered points of exercise.

§ 86....*Exercise of the Regiment.*

The above being accomplished, the companies will be ordered to assemble in line, or in column, and the REGIMENT again united and formed will proceed to its particular EXERCISE as contained in the following articles, which may be classed and arranged according to circumstances, and the views of commanding officers: the modes of executing being detailed hereafter under their proper heads.

Detail of
exercise
by the re-
giment.

The Regiment standing in Open Column.

1. The column will close to half, quarter, or close column, and again take open distances either from the front, or rear division. § 153. Fig. 56.

2. The companies may singly countermarch by files. § 100. Fig. 30. B.

3. The flanks of the column may be changed, by the rear company becoming the front one, in consequence of a countermarch of the whole column from the rear. § 101.

4. The position of the column may be changed to either flank, by the companies facing, filing into

Fig. 36.

the new direction, and halting with their pivot flanks on it. § 123.

5. The open column will form in line.—By wheeling up when the whole is in the alignment.—By halting the head divisions in the line; filing the rear ones into it, and then wheeling up the Whole. By the head division halting on the line, and the rear ones wheeling back into echelon position, after which they move up into line. § 118. 124. 127.

Fig.34,35. 6. A front, centre, or rear division of the column may be placed in a new given direction, and the rest by file marching will take up their ground. § 120, 121, 122.

7. The column at half or quarter distance will form.—By filing into line.—Obliquing into line.—Divisions wheeling successively into line and taking open distances.

8. The divisions may face to either flank, march the lock step, halt, and again front into column. § 123.

9. The closing step may be practised by the whole column at once. § 43.

Fig.21,22. 10. The front of the column in march will be increased, and diminished, and the column will occasionally wheel to the flank into line to shew the preservation of distances. § 87.

Fig. 13. 11. From line the companies, or other divisions may wheel backwards on their pivots into open column, and to either hand. § 108.

12. March and prolong the line to the flank.— § 115.

Fig.36. *Wheel up into Line.* §....118.

Fig. 34, 35. 61. 13. Change of position on a central or flank company by filing, or by the echelon march of companies. § 120. 159.

14. The regiment may march in file to the flank at the lock step, and front. § 94.

15. The regiment may take 20 or 30 side steps to the flank without opening out. § 43. 79.

16. The regiment may advance in line, and halt. § 166.

17. The regiment may retire in line, and halt front. § 168.

18. The alternate companies will form two lines and march to front and rear, preserving intervals. § 175.

19. Passage in file through a second line, or wood, to front or rear, from a flank of each company. § 174. Fig. 33.

20. Passage of the obstacle in the march of the regiment, by divisions doubling as ordered. § 170.

21. The oblique march of the regiment, and change of direction by gradual alteration of the shoulders. § 169.

22. The regiment halted to be dressed, by advancing the platoon officers, and moving up the men. § 167. Fig. 14.

23. The whole or a wing of the regiment to be thrown forward on the centre or flank, by placing a few files, and the rest turning their shoulders, and gradually dressing up.—The same done backwards gradually at a short step without facing about.—Eyes being directed to the point of forming on all occasions.

24. The regiment will advance, and retire in echellons of companies. Form in line on any named one. Throw backward or forward any number of companies into echellon. Wheel them into oblique line. Fig. 57, 58.

25. The regiment retiring in two lines by alternate companies, may make a degree of wheel du-

ring the movement, so as to give a new direction to the line.

Fig. 23, 25, 26. 26. The regiment may pass a defile or bridge, to front, or to rear. § 91, 92.

Fig. 29. 27. The regiment may countermarch by files from one to the other flank. Also upon the centre from both flanks. Also from, and upon the centre. § 97, 98.

Fig. 30, A. 28. The regiment may countermarch by divisions from one to the other flank. Also upon the centre from both flanks. § 99.

Fig. 27, 28. 29. March of the regiment by divisions from one flank towards the other, either behind or before the front, each division wheeling and following successively the one that precedes it. § 96.

30. The regiment from line forming the square or oblong, marching, and again forming in line. Or from the square marching off in double column through a defile.

In Close Column.

Fig. 46, 47, 48. 31. The close column is formed on any named company. § 137.

32. The direction of the close column is changed. § 141.

Fig. 56. 33. The close column is opened out from the front or rear, and again closed up on any division. § 158.

Fig. 52, 53, 54. 34. The close column of two companies in front is formed from the column of one company in front. § 147.

Fig. 49, 50, 51. 35. The line formed either from the column (of one or two companies in front) halted, on a front, rear, or central division. Or from the column moving in file to its flank, on a front or rear division.

Or by an oblique deployment of its divisions.—
§ 144. 148.

36. The exercise of the firelock in all its parts both by companies and battalions, and especially loading and firing.

The FIRINGS may be applied and intermixed with these movements as found proper, and such other circumstances of formation and exercise as space allows of, and as occur to commanding officers, may agreeable to the modes laid down, be from time to time executed. But the above have been more particularly selected, as including almost all the various movements that can be required in the operations of the regiment when single, or united with others in line: They may be combined according to the ground, and to the views of the commander, and may arise from different situations by altering or adding the connecting circumstances, and the particular detail of their execution is to be found in the sections referred to.

The light company and grenadiers are generally supposed acting in line with the regiment: But the light company may be occasionally placed half of it behind each flank of the regiment; in that situation it is ready to cover the front, rear or flanks of the column when in march, to protect the forming of the line, or to cover its retreat. For these purposes it may from time to time be detached and act in division or individually as circumstances may require, and in the manner specified in its particular exercise. It can seldom be obliged to run or hurry; in such cases as demand it, it will march quick but in order, with files loose but not too open, and always under the command and guidance of its officers.

On all occasions of common parade, a guard, a regiment, or its parts should never assemble, or be dismissed, without performing some one operation

Light
company.

Mode of
instruc-
tion.

or other of movement, and of the firelock. • In this manner by simple, and imperceptible practice, the steadiness and instruction of every individual is attained, and officers become perfect in the three great and important field duties of precision and energy in their commands ; exact distances of march ; and the correct dressing and covering of pivots. The time often unnecessarily consumed in the field in detail and manual exercise will also be saved, and the regiment be there solely employed in executing the prescribed movements applied to such circumstances, and varieties of ground as present themselves to the commanding officer ; the modes of execution being already thoroughly understood, and instantly applied by each individual.

Attention
in exer-
cise.

Single companies or regiments when at exercise must generally consider themselves as part of a line, and not always detached, or independant bodies. Their movements and formations should be on a supposition of lining with other troops already placed on their flanks. Two or more persons separated at a proper distance from one another, and from the company or regiment, may represent the flanks and centre of an adjoining regiment, and may always first take their station in the new line. This would cause the formations to be made on dermined, not on accidental points ; the practice of which latter usage much tends to occasion that correctness and deficiency which sometimes appears when any number of our regiments are directed to move, act, or form, in concert. In general the regiment should not be looked on as a perfect or separate body, but only as a member of the line ; its movements as relative to and independant upon those of others, and its principal operations should be calculated accordingly.

In exercise the two flank companies may be occasionally separated from the regiment and repre-

sent the centre of two other regiments ; one of them will be named as the directing one in march, and the halt and dressing of the regiment will be made from its own centre towards each of them, as is directed for a line of regiments.

DIMINISHING OR INCREASING THE FRONT OF THE COLUMN.

The column of march or manœuvre, in consequence of obstructions in its route which it cannot surmount, is frequently obliged to diminish its front, and again to encrease it, when such difficulties are passed ; it is one of the most important of movements and a regiment which does not perform this operation with the greatest exactness and attention, so as not to lengthen out in the smallest degree, is not fit to move in the column of a considerable corps.

The increase or diminution of the front of the column is performed by the regiment, when in movement or when halted. In movement this operation is either done by each company successively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it, or else by the whole companies of the regiment at the same moment. In either case the chief of the regiment, at the instant that it should begin to reduce or increase its front, gives the general CAUTION so to do, and the chiefs of companies give their words of execution to the sub-divisions or sections to double behind, or move up quick to the regulating ones which preserve their original

distances from each other, and never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected with the operation that the others are performing.

When the column of companies is to be reduced to that of sub-divisions or sections, it will always be done by the others doubling from their pivot flank, behind their reverse flank, sub-division, or section, so that the regiment may remain ready to form in line by a simple wheel up to the flank ; therefore the doubling will be behind the right when the right is in front, or behind the left when the left is in front. When the front of the column is to be encreased, the sub-divisions or sections that doubled will move up to their leading one by a quick incline. As in diminishing or increasing the front of the column in march, the pivot division is the one that quits its direction, the exactness of pivots after such operation will appear to be interrupted ; but this is of no consequence, and instantly regained in a column of march ; It can hardly ever take place in a column of manœuvre which has entered a line on which it is to form.

§ 87.....*When a Regiment Column of Companies in March diminishes its Front, either by Companies successively, or the whole Regiment at once.*

When the leading company arrives within 12 or 15 paces of the point where it is necessary to diminish its front ; the commander will give a loud CAUTION that the sub-divisions are to double either by companies successively, or the whole regiment at once.

If successively,—The leader of the head company proceeds as directed (§ 56.) and each other does the same when it arrives on the spot where its preceding one doubled. Fig. 6. A.

If at once—On the general CAUTION from the regiment commander, each company leader without waiting for each other, proceeds as directed. (§ 56.) Fig. 6.

§ 88....*When the Regiment Column of Sub-divisions in march forms Column of Companies.*

The regiment commander gives a loud CAUTION, that column of companies are to be formed either successively, or by the whole regiment at once.

If successively.—Each inclines up as directed (§ 56.) when its leading sub-division arrives on the ground, where its preceding one formed up. Fig. 6. B.

If at once.—On the general CAUTION from the regiment commander : Each company leader proceeds as directed (§ 56.) without waiting for each other. Fig. 22.

When divisions double back or form up in column, ranks must be closed, arms carried, and the transition from one situation to the other made as quick as possible ; and as soon as the column is in its new order, the pivot flank leaders place themselves on those pivots.

When the front of a column is to be diminished, and the obstacle is before the part which is not to double, such part must incline after the doubling is made in order to pass it : but timely attention is to be given, to bring up, if possible, by inclining, the part which is not to double, square to the opening through which it is to pass, before such doubling be-

gins.—And when a diminution of front is immediately to follow an alteration in the direction of the march, such alteration should be made with a gradual sweep, so as to give the head of the column its new perpendicular direction, when at least 12 or 15 paces from the point of breaking off.

The successive breakings of each division of the column at the point of difficulty, and its subsequent moving up again as soon as it has passed it, is the the most general practice, but is the most likely to lengthen it out, which is the great evil to be avoided. The reduction of front by the whole regiment at once, is therefore the most eligible ; and for the same reason, the increase of front (when the rear of it has cleared the difficulty) by the whole regiment, is to be preferred.

As in a considerable column the successive doubling, or forming up of companies would be performed by each, when it arrived on the identical spot where the leading one of the column doubled or formed up :—So when this operation is done successively by regiment, each will at once in the same manner perform it when its head is arrived at the spot, (and of which it must be apprized) where the head of the preceding regiment was, when it so doubled or moved up.

Fig. 5. § 89.....*When the Regiment Column of Companies is*
C. 21. *halted, and to diminish its Front,*

The chief will give the word CAUTION to form column of sub-divisions or sections ; on which the covering serjeants will fall back and mark the future pivot flank of the doubling sub-divisions.

Inwards Face,
Q. March.
Halt, Front.
Dress.

The leaders of each company will instantly give the word *Face inwards* (disengaging their heads) *Q. March ; Halt, Front*, to their subdivisions or sections, when behind the standing sub-division or section, and dividing justly the distances that existed between companies ; the flank leaders will then place themselves on the pivots.

§ 90.....*When the Regiment Column of Sub-divisions Fig. 22. or Sections is halted, and to encrease its Front to —5. D. Companies.*

The chief will give the CAUTION to form Companies.

To the—Oblique,
Q. March.
Forward.
Halt, Dress.

The leader of each company immediately orders the bodies that move up, *To the—Oblique—Quick, March—Forward—Halt, dress*, when joined to the standing sub-division or section.—
 The leader then places himself on the proper pivot flank of his company.

Should a column be retiring with the rear rank leading, the divisions will double as already prescribed, so as to preserve the sub-divisions or sections in their natural order for forming : and when the ground allows, will again encrease the front of the column.

When the column has to pass a bridge, or short defile, and that there is a certainty of immediately

after resuming the front which it has diminished, then such part of the reverse flank of the leading division as the defile will receive will pass it in front, and such part of the pivot flank, as is necessarily stopt, will by command *Face Inwards* and follow close in file ; on quitting the defile, the filing part will form up at a lengthing step, but the general rate of the column will at no time be altered : In this manner division succeeds division, without any improper extension taking place. But if the column must continue any time on a reduced front, then it should so be diminished by the doubling back of divisions.

Fig. 23

When a close column, or one at quarter distance is to pass a defile, before it enters, it must stand on such a front as will require no farther reduction ; and therefore on approaching the defile, a halt if necessary must be made, and such operation performed as will enable it to enter on such front as it can maintain in passing. When the defile is passed, a new arrangement will determine the advance of the column.

PASSAGE OF A BRIDGE, OR SHORT DEFILE FROM LINE.

§ 91.....*A Regiment formed in Line may have to pass a short Defile, or Bridge in its Front.*

Fig. 67.

If before a Flank—It will from that flank wheel into column, cross on such front as will fill the defile, and the column will be close or open according as, after passing, it may be required either to deploy into line, or to prolong any given direction.

If before the Centre—The two centre subdivisions may stand fast; the rest of the regiment will break inwards by subdivisions; the whole will march forward in double column.—When passed, the centre subdivisions stand fast; the others wheel to right and left, march to the flanks, and successively wheel up into line, (or) they proceed in march, and remain in double column 'till the head arrives at such point, and is placed in such direction as the line is to be formed in.—Should the bridge or defile only allow 6 in front to pass, when the head of the double column arrives close at it, its two divisions having two paces distance betwixt them, will file from their inward flanks to the front, pass, and then move up into column as before, being in the same manner followed by every other division.

Fig. 69.

But as many inconveniences attend all central columns, when a positive position is not to be occupied immediately after passing a bridge or defile; therefore in most cases the march in regiment column from one flank, and on such front as is necessary, is preferable; for from that order every possible after-situation is accurately and easily taken up; such as the windings of a height; the skirting of a wood; or the prolonging of any given straight direction.

The regiment may also form close column of any given front, on the division which is opposite the bridge or defile, pass in that shape, and extend as ordered after passing.

§ 92....*A Regiment formed in Line may have to pass a Defile or Bridge in its Rear.*

If in the Rear of a Flank. It will march off from the other flank behind the rear in column of companies or sub-divisions successively, the front rank

Fig. 24.

leading ; wheel behind the standing flank ; pass ; and again wheel, and prolong any given direction.

Fig. 26.

If in the Rear of the Centre.—It will march off as before from each flank, by columns of sub-divisions behind the rear, the leading ones when near meeting, will wheel inwards ; pass in double column ; and then, if ordered, the divisions will wheel outwards successively, and take up a line parallel to the one it quitted.—If the bridge or defile will not allow above six men to pass in front, the double column, when it arrives at the entrance, will file to the front from its inward flanks as before directed ; pass ; move up into column ; and either extend into line to each flank ; or move on, in any given direction. In this way will the regiment be less liable to lengthen, than if it at once files from both flanks behind the centre ; passes ; and again takes up its ground in file.

If after passing in files or columns, the march is to be continued forward ; should the wings be in file, they will form up to columns of sub-divisions ; the proper leading wing, according as the front of the line should be, will march on, and the other will follow it by countermarching its divisions successively from its rear, and in this manner the whole will be in column of sub-divisions, which may be ordered, if proper, to form companies.

Fig. 23.

The regiment may also form close column of a front equal to the breadth of the defile, behind or on the division nearest to it, and facing either way : it will then pass ; and proceed according to circumstances.

§ 93....*Where a Column of Divisions is successively to march off by wheeling from a Flank of a Regiment formed in Line, and that its Direction is towards the other Flank.*

If the Movement is made close along the Front.
The leading flank division wheels up and marches along the line, and each other division successively wheels up behind it at the proper time, so as to follow in column, and to have its proper distance. Should the new direction make a small angle with the line, each division must move forward quick and successively to that direction, as its turn comes, before it commences its wheel, and so as not to lose its distance.

If the Movement is made close along the Rear.
The leading flank division wheels 3-4ths of the circle, and each other one successively half of the circle, so as to have the remaining quarter to wheel, when its preceding division arrives at its pivot. Should the line of march make a small angle with the old position, then each division, after wheeling its half circle, will have to advance to that line in due time, and successively, before it makes its remaining part of the wheel which brings it into column.

The open column may also in the before cases be advantageously formed by the successive FILING of divisions in the following manner: When the march is made from one flank of the regiment towards the other, and either along the front, or rear.

The leading division will *Face*; *March* out perpendicular to the line, its own length; *Halt, Front*; *March*; and then proceed. The division next it will *Face*, disengage its head towards the column; and when the leading division arrives, the other will then *March* quick in file; *Halt, Front*; *March*;

and thus follow division after division, each being ready and timing its several operations, so that the true distances are preserved.

It is to be observed, that in marches made in this manner along the FRONT, the divisions face outwards or towards the moving flank of the regiment, and disengage their heads to the front: But in those made along the REAR, they face inwards or towards the standing flank, and disengage their heads to the rear. This method is peculiarly useful when the column moves to the rear, as much wheeling is avoided, and each division can with quickness and accuracy take its place in column.

§ 94....MARCH OF THE REGIMENT IN FILE.

The march of the regiment in file, and without opening out, can hardly be required, except in smooth ground, and for the purposes of countermarching, or of closing, or opening an interval in line.

<p>FACE.</p> <p>MARCH.</p> <p>HALT.</p> <p>FRONT.</p>	{	<p>At the word <small>FACE</small>, &c. the whole face to the hand ordered, and the officers take one side step to the front out of the rank, and are replaced by their serjeants.</p> <p>At the word <small>MARCH</small>, the whole step off correctly. At the word <small>HALT</small>, the whole halt. And at the word <small>FRONT</small>, they front, and officers and serjeants resume their places. The officers being out of the ranks during the march (and which will take place whenever more than one company is to march in file) are of use in preserving the line and step.</p>
---	---	--

§ 95... *General Formations of the Regiment from File.*

A regiment which has been obliged to move in file will form.

1. *To either Flank*, by halting and facing to right or left as is necessary.

2. *To the front* of the march by halting, facing to the flank; wheeling up by companies into open column, and then applying the formations of the open or close column to its required situation. Or without halting and facing to the flank; the column of companies at once may be formed, by the files making a half face, and each marching up quick and diagonally to their respective leading men, who do not alter their pace; and as the pivot files are in the rear of companies, when they do come up, the column must be ordered to dress to them.

3. *To the rear* of the march, by first forming column of companies, and then applying the formations of the open or close column.

There can be few situations where the regiment must be formed to the front, or rear of the march, by the leading file halting, and the whole moving up successively to it, and forming away in the rear of and beyond each other to one of the flanks.

The head of the regiment file must be so conducted as to leave sufficient space to the proper hand for the other files to move up into open column of subdivisions or companies when ordered; and the pivot files in column are always the following ones, when the regiment is in file. If the regiment is lengthened out when it is ordered to form, it is evident that its facing into line, or its forming into column, must be successive as each file arrives at its place in line, or as each head file of the ordered divisions arrives at a wheeling distance from the head file of the preceding one.

§ 96....*A Regiment standing in narrow Ground may sometimes be obliged to march in File, in order to form Open Column from its leading Flank ; either before or behind that Flank ; before or behind its other Flank ; or, before or behind any central Part of the Line.*

Fig. 27. A. 1. *If before the Right Flank.* The right platoon will move on, the rest of the regiment will FACE to the right, and MARCH in file ; the divisions will successively *front*, and follow the leading one, and each other.

Fig. 27. B. 2. *If behind the right Flank.* The whole FACE to the right, and MARCH ; the right division instantly countermarches to the rear, *fronts* and moves forward, followed in the same manner by every other division, till the whole is in column.

Fig. 28. A. 3. *If before any central Point, or the Left Flank.* The regiment makes a successive COUNTERMARCH from the right flank towards the left, and when the right division is arrived at the point from whence it is to advance in column, it again *countermarches* to its right a space equal to its front, then *faces*, moves on, and is thus successively followed by part of the regiment. The other part of the regiment beyond the point of advancing, *FACES* inwards, when necessary makes a progressive march in file, and then *fronts*, and follows by divisions, as it comes to the turn of each, till the whole are in column.

Fig. 28. B. *If behind the centre or Left Flank.* The right part of the regiment COUNTERMARCHES from the right by files successively by the rear, and the other part of the regiment, as is necessary, makes a progressive march, by files, from its right to the central point, and there begins to countermarch ; at that point the leading, and each other division, *fronts* into column, and moves on.

When the left of the regiment is to be in front, the same operations inversely takes place.

This METHOD of forming open column should only be used in narrow grounds, and in particular situations that require it, as in the passing of a bridge or defile, or where the regiment stands in so confined a space as not to allow room for the wheeling of divisions. The difficulties at all times of moving a large body in file, and the constant and unavoidable checks given to the equality and justness of the march, by the divisions successively quitting the line, makes it impossible in the above cases, with due accuracy, to take up the proper distances; and therefore whenever the open column is to be formed from regiment and line, it ought to be done if possible by the wheelings of companies, sub-divisions, or sections.

COUNTERMARCH BY FILES.

The *countermarch* by *Files* is of two kinds.— Either SUCCESSIVE (the body being halted), by each file wheeling successively on its ground as it comes to its turn: Or, PROGRESSIVE (the body being in motion), by each file wheeling, when it comes up to the point at which the leading file wheeled. In the first case the body must shift its ground to a flank, a space at least equal to its front: In the second it will perform this operation of the countermarch on its original ground, exchanging flanks and fronts; in both cases the pivots are in a small degree moveable.

Fig. 29.
A. B.

The *Countermarch* by *Files* may be made either before or behind the body. If made BEFORE it, the front rank men will be the pivots on which each

file will wheel: If made BEHIND it, the rear rank men will then be the pivots on which each file will wheel. All countermarches by file necessarily tend to an extension of that file; the greatest care must therefore be taken, that the wheel of each file is made close, quick, and at an encreased length of step of the wheeling men, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole, and unity of step is absolutely indispensible.

The *File* marching or countermarching of a regiment or greater body, will be made in ordinary time. Of smaller divisions in general in quick time.

§ 97....*Countermarch of the Regiment, from both Flanks on its Centre, by Files.*

A CAUTION is given that the regiment will countermarch.—

Fig. 29. C.
THE REGIMENT
WILL COUNTER-
MARCH.

BY WINGS OUT-
WARDS FACE.

MARCH.

The wings FACE from the colours which stand fast, and a serjeant remains at the point of each wing in order to mark the ground. At the word MARCH the right wing files successively, close behind the rear rank, and the left wing before the front rank of the regiment, till they arrive at the points where each other stood.

HALT.
COVER.

FRONT.

They then HALT, and the front rank of wings is quickly covered on the colours which have kept their ground, and served as a pivot on which the regiment turns. The wings when covered in the line, FRONT, looking to the colours, and the colours take their places. If a more accurate dressing is necessary, it must be given by the commanding officer.

§ 98.... *Countermarch of the regiment, from its centre, and on its centre, files.*

A CAUTION is given that the regiment will countermarch.—

Fig. 29. D.	{	The whole FACE to the
BY WINGS INWARDS		colours, which stand fast,
FACE.		and a serjeant remains to
BY WINGS, 3 SIDE		mark each flank. The whole
STEPS TO THE RIGHT,		are ordered to take 3 SIDE
		STEPS to the right, at the
MARCH.		word MARCH, in order to
		disengage.
MARCH.	{	At the second word MARCH,
		the whole move on, and each
		file wheels successively into
		the centre as it arrives at,
		and beyond the colours.—
		As soon as each company is
		in the line from the colours
		to the flank serjeant, its offi-
Front.		cer <i>fronts</i> it. When the
		whole is formed the colours
		countermarch, and the whole
		are looking to the colours
		till otherwise ordered.

In the countermarch from both flanks no part of the regiment is fronted till the whole is on its ground. In the countermarch from the centre, the regiment begins instantly and successively to front by companies, as each is ready and on its ground.

§ 99.... *Countermarch of the Regiment or Line on its Centre, by Companies or Sub-divisions.*

When a whole regiment is to countermarch on a central point; although it may be done by files, yet without great care it will be apt to open out; such,

Fig. 30 .A.

or a larger body, will best and quickest make such countermarch by the march of columns of companies or sub-divisions in front.

One or two central sub-divisions wheel the half circle upon their centre point; or countermarch into the new line, so that the front rank shall occupy the ground which the rear rank did, and the regiment is CAUTIONED to countermarch from its centre by sub-divisions.

WINGS ABOUTFACE.

SUB-DIVISIONS

INWARDS WHEEL,

MARCH.

Halt, Dress,

MARCH.

Wheel.

Halt, Dress.

One of the wings FACES to the right about: both wings WHEEL inwards by sub divisions: they MARCH along the rear and front of the formed division, and successively wheel up into their respective places on each side of of those already arranged in the line.

Halt, Front, Dress.

The sub-divisions which wheel up to the rear, successively *Halt, Front, Dress*, when they come to their ground, and the officers who command them must take care not to pass the rear, but to be at their proper front rank when they *halt, front* their sub-divisions.

Should it be intended that the front rank of the directing company or sub-divisions should stand on the identical line it occupied before the countermarch, it will be so placed; and in that case after the sub-division had wheeled inwards, the wing which was to march in rear of it would shift a few paces to the flank, in order to get clear of the rear ranks, and would then be put in march.

When at any time one flank of a regiment or line is to be placed at the spot where the other one stands, it cannot be done in a shorter manner than by prolonging the new line. If the flanks are to exchange place with each other, the countermarch on the centre, or on a flank, must effect it: the single regiment may do it by files; but a line must do it by countermarch of divisions in open column.

§ 100.....*When the Regiment Column (or a more considerable one) countermarches each division by Files, so as to change its Front and face to its former Face.*

Fig. 30. B.
COUNTERMARCH
BY FILES.
RIGHT, FACE.

If the Column stands with the Right in Front.—A CAUTION to countermarch is given. At the word RIGHT FACE, the whole face to the right, each company officer will immediately quit the pivot, and place himself on the right of his company, and his covering serjeant will advance to the spot which he has quitted, and face to the right about.

MARCH.

At the word MARCH, the whole move, the officer wheels short, round to the right and proceeds, followed by his files of men till he has placed his pivot front rank man close to his serjeant who remains immovable. Each officer instantly gives the word *Halt, Front,—Dress*, to his company, so as to have it

*Halt, Front,
Dress.*

squared and closed into the right which is now the pivot flank, and on which the officer now replaces his serjeant, who falls back behind the rear rank. In this manner the column will face to its former rear.

COUNTERMARCH
BY FILES.

LEFT, FACE.

MARCH.

Halt, Front.
Dress.

If the Column stands with the Left in Front. The CAUTION to countermarch is given. At the word LEFT FACE, the whole face to the left, the officer moves to the left of his company, and the serjeant occupies his place, and faces about. At the word MARCH the officer wheels short to the left and proceeds as before, till he is fixed on the pivot flank, now the left, as the column stands with its right in front.

In the countermarch, the facing is always to that hand which is not the pivot, but which is to become such.

This countermarch of each division separately on its own ground, is an evolution of great utility on many occasions. It enables a column which has its right in front, and is marching in an alignement, to return along that same line, by becoming a column with its left in front, and to take such new positions in it as circumstances may require, without inverting or altering the proper front of the line. In many situations of forming from column into line, it becomes a necessary previous operation.

When a column countermarches by divisions each on its own ground, unless the divisions are equal, the distances after the countermarch will not

be the true wheeling distances, but will be such as are equal to the front of the preceding division, and therefore the true distances must be regained, before the divisions can truly wheel up into line.

101.....*When the leading Flank of the Column is changed by the successive March of Divisions from the Rear to the Front.*

HALT.
LEFT WING TO
THE FRONT.
Right, Face.
Quick, March.

Halt, Front.
March.

Right, Face,
Quick, March.

Halt, Front,
March.

If the right is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance. The whole is ordered to HALT. At the caution LEFT WING to the front, the officer of the left (the rear) immediately orders it *Right, Face,—Quick March*, till his left flank can freely pass near the right flank of the others. He then commands *Halt, Front,—March*, (in ordinary time) close by the right flank of the company then preceding him.

The officer commanding that company, as soon as the other approaches him, orders, *Right, Face,—Quick March*, behind the now leading one.—*Halt, Front*, when he covers—and then *March*, when at the due wheeling distance. All the other companies successively perform the same operation ; and when the right company has taken its place in the rear, the whole column is in perfect order.

If before this operation the column should be closed to half or quarter distance, then all the com-

panies may be FACED at the same time, proceed as above directed, and each takes its distance from its preceding one, before it moves on.

This operation is often required in taking up original positions from column of march. It changes the leading flank of a regiment, or a more considerable column, and enables it to enter on a line which unforeseen circumstances require it should prolong. It permits regiment columns assembled at rendezvous, to march off from whatever flank is most advantageous for each to enter on its line of formation. It prepares a column which has expected to form by wheels to its left, to be ready to form by wheels to its right, without inverting its order. In a column composed of several regiments, where an inversion of the regiments within themselves, but not of the wings, is meant to be prevented, then each regiment separately will perform this operation; but if the inversion of the wings also is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed, as if it was a single regiment.

It must be observed as a general principle, that the divisions which advance come out always on the side to which front is to be made, and on which the enemy is placed, because then with the divisions which are free he can be opposed, while the others are moving behind the line.

§ 102....*When the Column changes its Wings on the Ground on which it then stands.*

Fig. 31. C.
 HALT.
 LEFT WING TO
 THE FRONT.
 RIGHT ABOUT
 FACE,
 MARCH.

{ The left or rear company proceeds as has been already directed : All the others go to the RIGHT about, and MARCH on at the ordinary step towards the place from whence the left moved.

Left, Face.
Quick March.
Halt, Front,
March.

When the company next it arrives at that place, it receives the order *Left, Face,—Quick, March*, behind the left company, then *Halt, Front*, and *March*, when at its due distance. In this manner all the rest proceed, till the right company when it fronts finds itself where the left originally stood only that the whole column is removed to the right a space equal to its front.

§ 103....*When a Column changes its Wings by the Divisions marching through each other, from Rear to Front.*

Fig. 31. D.

COMPANIES TO
 RIGHT AND LEFT
 OPEN,
 MARCH.
 HALT.

The column standing marched from the right should naturally form to the left, but it is here intended to form to the right. At the word COMPANIES to the right, and left OPEN—MARCH, all the companies (except the last) do open by the side step, half to each flank, a space sufficient to allow a company to march through in front.

March,
Close inwards.

March.

The left company does not open but *Marches* on through the others, and as soon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that company closes by the side by the side step, *Marches* and follows at its due distance : In

PART III.

Halt.
March.
 RIGHT ABOUT
 FACE.
 MARCH.
Inwards Turn,
Front March.
 HALT.

{ this manner they succeed each other, till the column is formed as marched off from the left.

{ But if the ground of the column is not to be changed after opening out, the last company *moves* on, after the others having *FACED* about and marched, have arrived at its ground ; each there successively *faces* inwards and joins, then *fronts* and *marches* on till the word HALT is given, when the flanks are changed, and that the left company is exactly on the ground where the right stood. The leading company must take short paces, to allow for the various operations of the following one.

The above method of countermarch is more calculated for a parade than for the general movements of the regiment.

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE REGIMENT.

CHANGES of POSITION of the regiment or line from one distant situation to another, are made either in *Line*, or by the *Echellon* march of divisions ; or by the movements of the column, especially of the *Open Column*.

By the
 move-
 ments in
 open co-
 lumn.

Changes of position in OPEN COLUMN, are movements of previous disposition, made from one distant situation to another, and not liable to the interruption of an enemy. Where circumstances allow,

original or new positions are in this manner easiest and soonest taken up.

Changes of position of the Regiment or Line already formed, when made in one or more Open Columns, may be divided into 4 Parts.

1st. The line wheels the quarter circle by platoons, or such other divisions as are ordered to either hand, so as to be ready to divide into one or more columns.

2d. The column or columns file by divisions, or march in front, as is necessary and ordered, to arrive at their position in the new direction.

3d. The divisions again form in a general open column, perpendicular to the new direction.

4th. When the divisions of each regiment are thus arrived at their ground, halted, and adjusted, the line is formed by their wheeling up,—and thus regiment after regiment ; each forming when its adjoining one has 3 or 4 of its divisions standing in column on the line.

The ECHELLON changes of position are the safest that can be employed in the presence of and near to an enemy, they are almost equal in security to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel in the line, but which is not to be attempted ; they can be used in the most critical situations, where the filings and movements of the open column could not be risked ; they are more particularly used when the enemy's flank is to be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward. The advantages attending them are, the preserving a general front during the march, and allowing a sufficient freedom of movement, which in such situation is indispensable ; they enable to change position on any division

By the
move-
ments in
Echellon.

of the line, either on a fixed or moving point ; and at any instant the movement can be stopped, the line formed, and a sudden attack repulsed. The echelon changes require the ground to be nearly of such nature as a full line could advance in ; and any of its divisions that meet with obstacles in their march will pass them in the same manner as they do in line, by filing or doubling, and without interrupting the progress of the others.

Changes of position of the Regiment or Line made by the Echelon march of Platoons, consists of three parts.

1st. The platoon wheels forward a certain number of paces towards the hand to which they are to change position, and so as that each thereby stands perpendicular to its future line of march.

2d. Each platoon marches on directly in front, to its proper point in the new line.

3. Each platoon successively on its leading flank arriving at the platoon preceding it (which is already halted in the line), dresses up and forms truly in that line.

Each change of position of the regiment, or line, may be considered as a general wheel of the whole made on a POINT, either IN, BEFORE, OR BEHIND, the old line. The regiment or line therefore breaks to which every hand, and to which ever division it is to manœuvre to or be led by : When to a flank, generally to that which is nearest to, and is first to enter any part of the new position : When a central division determines its movement, it breaks to right or left inwards, and faces such division, which makes its change of situation on its own ground. When this POINT is IN the old line, it must necessarily be within the regiment when single, or

within a certain named regiment of a line : Such regiment therefore will have to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itself, viz. on such division flank or central, as is already rested on that point, by making its other divisions either by *filing* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line : But all the other regiments will have the double operation of moving up to the new line, and then forming upon it. When this POINT IS BEFORE OR BEHIND the old line, every regiment whether single or connected, will have this double operation to perform.

§ 104.....*Changes of Position of a Regiment.*

The regiment formed in line changes to a new position either on a fixed point within itself, or on a distant point, which marks one of its future flanks, or where one of its central divisions is to be placed.

When on a fixed Point, either Flank, or Central.

1st. By the echellon march of the divisions either to front or rear, which move on and line with the placed or fixed one, when it halts on its ground. (§ 159.) Fig. 33. A.

2d. By breaking into open column so as to face the fixed point. Filing divisions to front or rear, into the new direction, and wheeling up into line, when the column is prepared. (§ 120, 121.) Fig. 33. B.

When on a distant Point, and that the whole are moveable.

No. 1. By the echellon wheel of divisions, and the subsequent march of the whole, till the one nearest to the new line arrives in it, and that the others move on and form to it. (§ 162.) Fig. 42. A.

Fig. 42. B. No. 2. By the breaking into open column to the one or other flank, and the immediate filing of all the divisions from the old line to the new one. (§ 123.)

Fig. 42. C. No. 3. By the march of the regiment column to the point where its head is to rest, and then facing, and filing its divisions into the new line. (§ 124.)

Fig. 42. F. No. 4. By the march of the regiment column, and its wheeling into the new line, at the point where its rear is to rest. (§ 125.)

Fig. 42. H No. 5. By the march of the regiment column, and its wheeling into the new line at a point where one of its central divisions is to rest. (§ 126.)

Besides the above, which are the most general modes by which changes of position should be effected by the regiment, the open column on entering its ground may also occasionally be required to form in line in the following manner :

Fig. 60. No. 6. When the column having arrived perpendicularly or obliquely behind the line at the point where its HEAD is to rest, is there halted.—The leading division may be placed on the line, and each other division be ordered to make such a degree of wheel backwards, as will enable it to march on in front perpendicular to its proper point on the new line, where each successively arrives and forms. This is a movement in column, and formation in echelon. (§ 127.)

Fig. 42. D. No. 7. The column arriving in the direction of the line, or in any direction oblique, or perpendicular behind the new line, and at the point where its HEAD is to rest, but which its rear is to pass.—May form by the wheel of the leading division into the new line, and the successive march of the other divisions behind it, and behind each other, till they arrive at their several points of wheeling up. (§ 128.)

No. 8. The column marching perpendicularly up to the line, and to the point where its HEAD is to rest, and being at least a distance equal to the length of the column from such point. The leading division proceeds at a half pace only ; the others oblique from the column, successively move up to the leading division, and the front being thus gradually increased the whole regiment arrives at the same time on the line of formation. (§ 129.) Fig. 42. F.

The column arriving behind any part of its ground may also move up to close column, and form by its deployments on the front, the rear, or on a central division.

§....105.

A regiment broken into, and marching in open column, must arrive at, and enter on the ground on which it is to form in line, either—In the DIRECTION of that line ; PERPENDICULAR to that line : or in a direction more or less OBLIQUE, and betwixt other two.

If the Column is marching in the direction of the Line, it will either enter where its head is to rest, or where its rear is to rest.

If where its HEAD is to rest.—the leading division will wheel up into line, and the others march on behind it, and successively wheel up as in No. 7.

If where its REAR is to rest.—It marches with its pivot flank, and at just distances along the line, till the rear platoon is at its point, the whole then halt, and wheel up into line as in No. 4. Fig. 43. A.

If the Column enters perpendicular, or oblique to the new line, it will enter either, where its head is to rest, where its rear is to rest, or at some intermediate point where a central division is to rest.

If where its *Head* is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 3.

If where its *Rear* is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 4.

Fig. 43.
B. C.

If at an intermediate point where a central division is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 5.

Relative
situation
of old and
new posi-
tions.

All new positions, that a regiment or line can take with respect to the old one, are—*Parallel*, or nearly so to the old line.—*Intersecting* by themselves or their prolongation, some part of the old line or its prolongation.

Parallel.

New *Parallel* positions being necessarily to the front or rear of the old one, the regiment will according to circumstances take them up by the *Echellon* march, the *filing* of divisions, or the *movement* in open column, and its subsequent formation in line.

Intersect-
ing.

New *Intersecting* positions, which themselves cut the regiment, will be taken up by the *Echellon* march, or by the *filing* of divisions.—All other new positions which themselves or their prolongation, intersect the old line, or its prolongation, will in general be taken up by the *March* in open column, and its subsequent formations when it arrives at the line ; some such positions will however allow of, and require being made by the *Echellon* march, or by the *filing* of divisions.—In general the regiment will break to the hand, which is nearest to the new position, be conducted to its nearest point in the new line, and formed on it as directed.

In changes of position by the open column, the whole regiment (as a general rule) should wheel the whole quarter circle into open column, al-

though it may often seem an unnecessary operation, and that disengaging the heads of divisions would answer the same purpose, where the change is to be performed by *filig*.—Yet the above general mode should be observed, because it is a positive and defined situation, from which every change can proceed, whereas all other modes are liable to uncertainty and mistake, and the apparent going over a little unnecessary ground is a matter of no moment in point of time, and begets perfect precision, and correctness of execution.

When the battalion breaks in to open column to make a change of position

This rule which is universal for all the following divisions of a column, may in some situations be dispensed with as to a leading division which often has to wheel up again over the same ground, when the column is put in motion towards its new position: A previous and separate *CAUTION* from the chief of the regiment may therefore, when it is seen necessary, prevent this extra movement to the leading division, and give it a more favorable situation in the direction in which it is to proceed.—As in the case of a regiment marching off by column of divisions from a flank to the front.

If the wheel is made backwards. The flank division may stand fast, till the wheel is made, and when the rest of the column has marched up to it, it then receives the word *March* from its own leader, and proceeds.

If the wheel is made forward. At the first word *March*, the flank division moves on a space equal to its own front and halts, it is then ready to proceed when the whole is put in motion.

Should the regiment march off by column of divisions from a flank to the rear: Whether the divisions *wheel backwards or forwards* the flank division wheels with the others, and from that situation, that division will again wheel to the rear, when the column is put in motion.

In central changes of position, the regiment or line, breaks in to open column, facing to the named division.

Fig. 32.

In all central changes of position on a point within a regiment or line, and which are made by the movements of the open column: The regiment or line breaks backwards into two open columns facing each other and the given point, so that the one has its right in front, and the other its left. From this situation by the filing, or by the march of divisions, its component parts move to their new position, and the division which faces the given one having there taken a double wheeling distance, the divisions wheel up into line.

The advantages of making central changes, by breaking inwards, so as the whole stand faced to the named division, in two columns, are—That the universal rule of all bodies breaking, dressing, forming to whatever point they are led by and manœuvre to, is observed.—That the taking of distances in the new column, are all from the front and none from the rear, which last is a matter of difficulty and delay. That the regiments of the wing which is thrown forward, advance from their inward flank and in the shortest line, to where that flank is again to be placed, at this point they begin to form, and the formation is made by quick filing of divisions into the new column, where the exact covering of pivots and taking of distances is instantly and easily ascertained.—That the parts of the line on each side of the central division work exactly in the same manner, and form in line by one and the same method.—That the breaking inwards of the line, or the countermarch of such part of the column as is before the central division, gives these advantages, nor is the countermarch the affair of a moment.

In central changes, was the whole of a line to break to one hand, or part of a column not to countermarch.—Although such part as was behind the central division, and thrown backwards, would take its distances from the front, and might proceed exactly

as above; yet such part of each as was before the central division would be obliged to take its distances and covering of pivots in the new column from the rear, as the whole line would be broken the same way as the named division.—This, though it may not seem difficult when such part consists only of the few divisions of a single regiment, will when it is composed of several regiments in addition, be found no easy matter to accomplish with precision. In such case, whatever divisions of the central regiment were arranged before the named division, would file from their advanced flanks, and place themselves in the above manner in the new line. The entire regiments which were before the named division would march in separate columns of divisions, each from its head or outward flank, and enter (by wheeling) the new line, at the point where its rear or inward flank was to be placed, it must then prolong the line and be halted the instant the rear arrived at the point where the head entered. This operation would not be found easy, be slower, and attended with more uncertainty than the other method by which the distances are so readily, and exactly taken from the front, and where the same mode of execution is followed by both flanks of the line.—Although regiments and lines should be prepared to change their position in this manner if so required, yet the other method should be considered as the general one, and practised accordingly.

WHEEL OF THE REGIMENT FROM LINE INTO
OPEN COLUMN.....CHANGE OF DIRECTION OF
THE MARCH.....WHEEL AND ENTRY OF AN
ALIGNEMENT.....MARCH.....HALT....AND WHEEL
UP INTO LINE.

§ 106.....*When the Regiment halted in Line, wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES.
RIGHT WHEEL.

At the CAUTION Companies Right Wheel—The officers step out nimbly, and place themselves one pace before the centre of the companies facing to the front; at the same time the right hand man of the front rank of each company faces carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each company is to wheel. The covering serjeant of the right company also runs out and places himself at the point where the wheeling flank of that company is to *Halt* at the finishing of the wheel.—The covering serjeants of the whole fall back two paces.—The supernumerary rank closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.

QUICK MARCH.

At the word MARCH each company steps off quick, turning eyes (and not before) to the wheeling man, and carefully observing the general wheeling directions. The left, or wheeling man takes his firm lengthy step of 33 inches, neither opening from, nor pressing on, his own pivot, and turning his eyes towards that pivot. The officer during the wheel turns towards his men, and inclines to his new pivot, or left flank; and standing faced to it with a glance of the eye he sees when the quarter circle is completed, and each gives his word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant that the flank man is taking the last step which finishes his wheel perfectly square. The officer immediately corrects any dressing that the company may require within itself, instantly places himself on the pivot flank, and his serjeant covers the second file from that flank. Both colours wheel up into column, and at all times remain behind the third file from the pivot flank of the leading centre company, whether the company is halted or in motion.

Halt, Dress,

§ 107.... *When the Regiment halted in Line, Wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES, LEFT
WHEEL.

The same operation takes place as in wheeling to the right, with these variations:

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

{ that the left hand men of companies face before the wheel begins, and the left covering serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

After the regiment has in this manner wheeled forward into column, it will often happen that, from the inequality of divisions, different sizes of men, &c. &c. the pivots do not exactly cover ; yet in this situation are they to remain and to understand it as an invariable rule, that they are never to shift in order to cover, but by the express direction of the commanding officer, who will correct the pivots, if his intention is to pursue a straight line in order to form : but if the continuation of a march is the object, he will allow them gradually to get into its direction after they are put in movement. But the certain remedy for the above inconvenience is, that on all occasions of wheeling into open column from line, the wheels should be made BACKWARD instead of forward.

108....*When the Regiment halted in Line, Wheels backwards into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES.
ON THE LEFT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.

{ At the CAUTION, Companies on the left backwards wheel ; the officers step out nimbly and place themselves before the centre of their companies, facing to the front, at the same time the left hand man of the front rank of each company *faces* carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each compa-

ny is to wheel. The covering serjeant of the right company also runs back, and places himself at the point where the wheeling flank of that company is to halt at the finishing of the wheel. The covering serjeants of the whole fall back two paces. The supernumerary rank closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

At the word MARCH, each company steps back quick, and follows exactly the same directions that have been given in the case of wheeling forward.

§ 109....*When the Regiment halted in Line, Wheels backward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES, ON
THE RIGHT BACK-
WARDS WHEEL.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

The same operation takes place as when the right is in front, except that the right hand men of companies are the facers, and the left serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

§ 110....*If the Regiment is at once to break into Column of Sub-divisions or Sections.*

CAUTION.

Q. MARCH.

The pivot men of each *face*, and their divisions wheel into column at the general word MARCH;

Halt, Dress.

{ the company officers (only) give the word *Halt, Dress*, which suffices for the parts of each company. When the wheel is completed, and not before, the leaders who are to conduct the pivot flank of the second sub-division, or of the second or other sections, place themselves there. The officer is on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division, or section: his covering serjeant on the flank of the second sub-division, or second section; and an officer or non-commissioned officer from the rear on the flank of the last section, after wheeling into column. (§ 47. 48.)

§ 111....*When the Open Column is put in March in the Prolongation of the Line.*

MARCH.

{ The regiment standing in open column with the pivot flanks of its divisions on the line, and advanced points being ascertained, moves forwards at the word MARCH from its commanding officer.— (§ 115.)

Whenever the regiment wheels into open column in order to prolong the line on which it was formed, and that no distant point in that prolongation is previously given, the serjeant of the leading company will advance 15 or 20 paces, and place himself in the line of the pivot flanks, and the leading officer will thereby (taking a line over his head) be enabled to ascertain the direction in which he is to move.

§ 112....*When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes Direction to the Left, on a movable Pivot.*

Right Shoulder forward....Forward....As explained in § 23. 52.

§ 113....*When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes Direction to the Right, on a movable Pivot.*

Left Shoulder forward....Forward....As explained in § 23. 52.

§ 114....*When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels on a fixed Point into a new Alignement.*

The alignement is entered by the leading division wheeling either to right or left. In either case the left or pivot flank officers of the companies must be placed on it: in the first instance behind it, and in the second before it. In both cases the line is afterwards formed by wheels of companies to the left: in the first instance the line will front the same way as the column; in the second, it will front to the rear of the column.

§ 115.....*When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels to the Right, on a halted Pivot into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.*

Fig. 44. C. { The alignement being determined
by given objects, and the point (c)
of entry marked, the leading officer
who has marched his left flank on
that point, when he arrives at a

Right, Wheel.
Halt, Dress.
March.

distance equal to the front of his company from it, orders *Right, Wheel*, and the quick wheel is made, so, that on the conclusion of it at the word *Halt, Dress*, he himself shall be standing on the new alignment on the flank of his company ready to give the word *March* as soon as the succeeding company has arrived at the wheeling point.

After this he moves on without looking behind, regarding his division, or allowing any thing to take off his attention, and at the established ordinary pace towards the distant points, so that his shoulder shall just graze the head of any mounted officer's horse posted at an intermediate point (or the breast of any man on foot placed for the same purpose), and which he invariably preserves in a straight line with the given object.—This rule all the following officers must observe at the same time that they maintain their exact distance from the company preceding. And should any of the companies deviate to either hand, those that succeed them must rectify the fault, and exactly touch the point where the adjutant is placed.

The principal attention of the leading officer must be, never to change the time or length of step, otherwise a stop must happen in a considerable column, and the soldiers will afterwards be obliged to run. He must move in one constant position with his front rank perpendicular to the line on which he marches. The same directions regard the other officers who conduct companies, and who in addition must correctly observe, that at the word *March* given to the preceding company, the following one is ordered, *Right, Wheel*. In this they will exactly agree if the officers preserve their due distances, and make their

wheels at a redoubled pace, and also, that all the companies wheel at the identical point where the leading one wheeled; therefore all the companies must march straight up to the point where the first rank of the preceding one commenced its wheel.—The attention of pivot officers marching in the alignement have been already described in the open column.

To insure the more correct march and halt of the pivot flanks in the alignement. The commander of the regiment or column may occasionally go forward to an advanced adjutant, and being himself truly placed, may look back to the point of wheeling or entry into the alignement, or to any other fixed object that is in it. He can then see if the rear flanks of the column keep the true line, or deviate from it, and may correct them by signal, or by sending back an adjutant to take his position in the true line, and to whose direction they are immediately to conform.

In this manner also can the leader, if necessary, correct the pivot flanks after a halt, when there is a rear point of view sufficiently marked. If that is not the case, he may go towards the rear of the column, line the flank of the 5th or 6th company, on that of his leading company, and a front point of march, he will then return to the first company, and on the flanks of that and the 5th correct the rest of the pivots.

§ 116.... *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels to the Left on a fixed Point, into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.*

Fig. 44. B.

Left Wheel. { The leading company begins its wheel to the left on the alignement itself when its pivot flank officer arrives at the point of wheeling,

Halt, Dress. { instead of (as in the preceding section) beginning at the distance of a
March. { company short of that point. (§ 51.)

Whatever has been said respecting a regiment broken from the right, takes place in one broken from the left; the only difference is, that the flanks are now changed; that the left company does what before was done by the right; and that the right flank officers are placed on the alignment instead of the left.

§ 117....*When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, and composed of Divisions of unequal Strength, Wheels to the Right, on a halted Point, into a new Alignement.*

Fig. 45.

Right, Wheel.

*Halt, Dress,
March.*

The pivot or left flank continues to direct till the leading division arrives in its full front, behind its proper wheeling ground, and at a due distance from it. The word *Right, Wheel*, being then given, the reverse or right flank (*c*) of that division stops, and the general pivot one completes the wheel, so that at the next words *Halt, Dress, March*, the conducting officer may be exactly placed on the new line of direction; they thus succeed each other, observing that a stronger division (*a*) wheels short of the ground of its preceding weaker one (*b*), by the space of as many files as it exceeds that preceding one; and a weaker division over passes the ground of its preceding one,

{ by the extent of as many files as it is deficient: in both cases after the wheel the divisions will have retained the same relative situations as before its commencement, and the left pivot flanks will still cover.

§ 118....*When the Open Column—Halts—Wheels up into Line, and Dresses.*

If in the manner already directed, the several companies of one or more regiments have entered the alignement, and marched with their pivot flanks along it, covering each other at their due distances for which company-officers are answerable, there can be nothing easier than to form well in line.

Fig. 44.

HALT.

{ Whenever therefore the head or the rear division arrives at the given point where it is to rest in line, the commander of the regiment gives the word HALT. No one moves after the delivery of this word, not even a half pace, but the foot which is then off the ground finishes its proper step, and the other is brought up to it. If that was not done, and that one company should stop while another was permitted to make one or two paces, those behind would be obliged to shift anew, and much confusion would arise from officers being deficient in one great principle of their business—the preserving of proper distances.—The instant the HALT is ordered, the commanding officer from the head divi-

sion of each regiment (he taking care that he is himself placed in the true line) makes any small correction on a rear point in that line that the pivots may require, although no such correction ought to be necessary.

WHEEL UP
INTO LINE.

The CAUTION is then given, companies wheel up into line; on which the pivot men of the front ranks face perfectly square into the new line; the company-officers move briskly out and place themselves one pace before the centre of each, their covering serjeants move to the right of the front rank of the companies if the wheel is to be to the left, or otherwise behind the pivot file if the wheel is to be to the right, and an under officer of the leading company of the regiment runs up, places himself square in the new line, and marks the point at which the wheeling flank of that company is to arrive and be halted.

Q. MARCH.


At the word MARCH, eyes are turned (and not before) to the wheeling hand, the whole step off in quick time, the wheeling man lengthening his step to 33 inches, and every other man diminishing his, as he is nearer to the standing flank.—The officers during the wheel turn round to face their men, incline towards the pivot of the preceding company, and as each perceives his wheeling man make the step which

Halt, Dress.

brings him up to that pivot; he gives the word *Halt, Dress*, strong and firm to his company, which halts with eyes still turned to the wheeling flank, and each officer being then placed before the preceding pivot to which his men are then looking, from thence corrects the interior of his company, upon that pivot, his own pivot, and the general line of the other pivots—This being quickly and instantaneously done, the officer immediately takes his post on the right of his company, which has been preserved for him by his serjeant.

In this manner dressing is made, and eyes are turned always to the point where the head of the column halted; to the right when the wheels are made to the left, and to the left when the wheels are made to the right; and if any future correction of the line is made by a field officer, it will be from the fixed point where the head of the column rested.

As there are so many determined points given, it becomes easy to dress correctly a platoon or regiment after wheeling up, if due care is taken that the pivot man do on no account move up, or fall back, whatever directions may be then giving by the company officers for completing the dressing. If a defect exists it must proceed from the other men not having lined with those fixed points; the internal correction of companies must therefore be made, but the original pivot men remain immoveable, until a general correction of dressing the regiment is made by a field officer if necessary. The officer of the third company for example, if the wheel has been made to the left, has only to consider the left



file leader of the second company close to whom he stands as to the point of Appui, and his own left flank man as the point to dress upon, there will then be nothing easier than to dress the other men of his company upon these ; but he will still more exactly do it, if he places himself 2 or 3 files on the other side of the pivot man of the second company, and from thence corrects his own. If all officers are in this alert and skilful, and that soldiers are accustomed to dress themselves, a regiment will be instantly formed, nor will the commander have any thing to rectify.

When the column has broken to the LEFT ; all that has been before said takes place ; and is in the same manner executed. Only the right flank man does what has been directed for the left ; he fronts when the platoon begins to wheel up ; and the point d'Appui being now on the left, the dressing must from thence be regulated, consequently the soldiers look to the left.

It is to be observed that when at any time after forming in line, there shall be a false distance between either of the flank divisions and the regiment, the officer of such division, without waiting for directions, may immediately by the closing step, join his division to the regiment : but no other division of a regiment is in such case ever to move, without orders from the commanding officer.

When the regiment has formed in line, and that there are several false openings betwixt divisions, they may be remedied by the closing step on the order of the commanding officer to CLOSE to any named division, the others halting successively by word from their several leaders. § 43, 79, and in the same manner may the crowding of files in a regiment, or parade be remedied, by closing from the point of crowding, and halting when sufficiently loosened.

§ 119....*When the Open Column which is to wheel into Line is composed of Sub-divisions, or Sections, and not of Companies.*

WHEEL INTO
LINE.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress,

{ At the word WHEEL, the company officer alone moves into the front, and the pivot leaders of the other sub-divisions or sections go to the point they would be at, if the column was a column of companies :
The pivot man of each body in the column faces. At the word MARCH, the whole wheel. And the company officer gives the word *Halt, Dress,* to the whole company. (§ 50.)

The line of the march of the open column will always be about a pace before the line on which the troops form ; because the one is the direction preserved by the officers in marching, and the other being that on which the flank men halt and the companies wheel up into line, is distant of course from the first the breadth of a file, which leaving the advanced points distinct, affords a great advantage in the formation and correction of the line. Although the officers halt in the alignement itself, yet it is impossible to allow them to remain immoveable as points of forming for their divisions, because the dressing of those divisions depends on them, and that they must occupy their proper places when in line. The flank files of men are therefore the pivots of divisions in wheeling up into line, although the officers are the pivots during the march, and an attempt to form the line on the points of march themselves would derange the pivot files of men, and cause disorder.

A commander must be careful that he himself is in the alignement whenever he dresses his regiment, or corrects the flanks of his divisions. In order to

direct well, he must place himself on the line, and on the adjutants who are in it, and give his horse such a direction, as the divisions should touch in marching.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE REGIMENT FROM LINE, BY MOVEMENTS OF THE OPEN COLUMN.

Changes of position are made either on a **FIXED** point within the regiment, or on a **DISTANT** point without it.

ON A FIXED POINT.

§ 120....*If the Regiment is to change position to the Front, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing forward the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 34. B.

The right flank (c) is the fixed point on which the change is made, and is in the intersection of both lines, the commander immediately ad libitum, places another point (b) 20 or 30 paces beyond that flank, these two determine the direction of the new line and face to it. The right platoon is *wheeled* forward to the right and placed in that direction, and is then immediately *wheeled* backward on the left, till it stands with its pivot (a) perpendicular to that direction, and on which its officer posts himself.

BY COMPANIES
ON THE LEFT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.
LEFT FACE.

The rest of the regiment is then wheeled backward on the left, by platoons and stands in open column. At the word left FACE, the whole (except the fixed platoon) face.

Q. MARCH.

At the word Q. MARCH, the several officers lead their files towards the points in the new line where the pivot flanks of their platoons ought to be placed, and the better to ascertain those points, the covering serjeant of each platoon will successively (as it approaches within 20 or 30 paces of the new line) run up and place himself upon it at the proper distance of his platoon, facing to the head of the column, and covering exactly those that have taken their places therein: The pivot flank officer (*a*) of the front platoon, and the advanced officer or serjeant (*b*) beforementioned are the original points on which the first serjeants that come up arrange themselves, and thereby become additional points for the others.

Halt, Front.
Dress.

The serjeant thus placed (being on the spot which the officer is afterwards to occupy; each officer comes up in his own person immediately before the serjeant, *Halts fronts* his platoon, *Dresses* it quickly by closing his flank front rank man to his serjeant, and placing it perpendicular to the new line. The officer takes the place of his serjeant, and the whole being steady, and pivots corrected by the commanding

WHEEL UP
AND FORM.

{ officer as they arrive upon the line, every one is in a situation to wheel up and form. Should no serjeant be previously advanced to give the pivot point, the officer must at once conduct the head of his file to it.

§ 121....*If the Regiment is to change position to the Rear, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing back the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 34. C.

ON THE LEFT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.
RIGHT FACE.

{ The direction of the line being ascertained in the before mentioned manner, the right platoon is wheeled back on the right into the line, and then backwards on the left, till its left or pivot flank (*a*) stands perpendicular to the new line. The regiment will break into open column on the left backwards. The platoons will face to the right, and the officers place themselves to lead.

Q. MARCH.

*Halt, Front.
Dress.*

{ At the word MARCH, the whole will lead to the rear, and the covering serjeants will successively as before take up their pivot points on the new line. The officer conducting each platoon when he arrives at his serjeant, will stop directly before him, allow his platoon to move on behind the serjeant 'till the rear file comes close to, but beyond him; the officer will then *Halt, Front—Dress* his platoon to the left, perpendicular to the new direction, and with his front rank closed in to the serjeant.

WHEEL UP { He will himself take the place of
AND FORM. { the serjeant, and remain steady on
 { the pivot flank, ready to wheel into
 { line.

When the position is changed to the left by throwing the whole right, either backward or forward, it then follows that the regiment breaks on the right backwards, that the rights become the pivot flanks, and that the same general circumstances of facing, filing, arranging serjeants on the pivot flanks, &c. still take place by the substitution of the commands, right for left, and left for right.

§ 122....*If the Regiment is to change position on a central halted Platoon, by the filing of Platoons, and that the right is thrown forward and the Left backward.*

Fig. 35. { One flank of the central platoon is considered as the point (*a*) of intersection, another point (*o*) taken ad libitum, determines the direction of the new line. The given platoon is first wheeled into it, and then wheeled back till it stands perpendicular to it; and the covering serjeant from each of the adjoining platoons runs out and marks where their future pivots (*c b*) are to be placed. The other platoons wheel backward, so as that they all stand faced to the given one. The whole (except the given platoon) FACE to the right; viz. those that are to move towards the rear, to the rear.

ON THE
RIGHT
AND LEFT {
BACK-
WARDS {
WHEEL. {

RIGHT
FACE. {

Q. MARCH. { They then MARCH, and the ser-
 { jeants giving ground in the line of the
 { pivots which is determined by the

*Halt, Front.
Dress.*

WHEEL UP,
AND FORM.

three already placed therein, they arrange themselves in two columns, before and behind the placed platoon, towards which the whole still face. The platoon (*b*) which immediately faces to and is next the placed one, must take care to form with a distance equal to its own front, and that of the placed one; all the others are at their just wheeling distances in column. From this situation the line is formed by a wheel to the proper front.

If the right is to be thrown back and the left forward, the only alteration from the above is, that the platoons would FACE to their left, and FILE from their left instead of their right.

ON A DISTANT POINT.

¶ 123....*When the Regiment is to change to a distant position either to its Front or Rear, by the filing of all its Platoons, and that this Position is either Parallel or Oblique to the one it quits.*

Fig. 42. B.

BY PLA-
TOONS, ON
THE ———
BACK-
WARDS
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

The regiment breaks into open column of platoons, to which ever hand the new position outflanks the old one, for to that hand will the whole have to incline during the march; and if it does not sensibly outflank, then the regiment will break to the hand next to the point of intersection of the two lines, for that hand is nearest to, and will in general be the first to enter any part of the new position.

TO THE...
FACE.

Fig. 36.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front.
Dress.

The regiment standing in open column is ordered to FACE. The leader of the second platoon has then a direction given him which crosses the new line at the point (*o*) as near as can be judged where the flank of that platoon is to be placed. The whole are then put in motion. The leader of the second platoon marches in his given direction at a steady pace; the commander of the regiment remains with the head platoon (*c*) and by making it insensibly advance, or keep back, regulates the heads of all the others during the march, as they endeavour to place themselves nearly in the prolonged line of the heads of the two leading platoons, but at any rate they are not to be before them; and when those two platoons *Halt* their pivots in the line, the others without hurrying arrive successively in the new direction, and stand in open column at their just wheeling distances. When the head of the column is within 30 or 40 paces of the new line, (its direction being already prepared,) the serjeants run out and mark the pivot flanks of their several platoons.

In this manner the commander who is himself with, and conducts the two leading platoons, moves them in the direction that best answers his views, and at once takes up any position and to any front that is necessary. As circumstances change his intentions, he may at every instant vary, and direct them upon new points of march; the rear of the column always conforming (without the necessity of sending particular orders) to whatever alterations

or directions the head may take ; and the commander conducting that head so as to enable the rear to comply with its movements without hurry.

As the lines of march in filing will seldom be perpendicular to the new line, the leaders of platoons will take care that their last 12 or 15 paces in approaching their serjeants shall be made in a direction perpendicular to the new line, so that their platoons may *Halt, Front*, justly, without any necessity of shifting their rear files.

During the transition from one position to another, the wheeling distances should be nearly preserved ; but at any rate great care must be taken that they are correct, just before entering the new line.

When the platoons in this manner gain a new position by filing, they always *file* from the flank which is nearest to that position, and place their pivot flanks upon it. If the pivot happens to be the leading flank, the conducting officer *Halts, Fronts* his platoon when he touches the new position, which is marked by his serjeant. But if the pivot is the following flank, the officer who leads stops in his own person when he arrives at the new position, marked also by his serjeant, and makes his platoon go beyond it and behind the serjeant, till his pivot man arrives in it. He then *Halts, Fronts* the whole platoon. Conducting officers must therefore recollect that it is always the pivot flanks which are halted in the new position, and that on them the platoons wheel up into line. In general when the platoons file to the front, the pivot flanks lead and arrive first in the new line : When they file to the rear, the pivots follow and arrive last in the line.

Changes of position are thus made in an accurate and expeditious manner by one or two regiments ; but an extensive line would be too much broken if thrown into so many small files, nor could it in open

ground, without the greatest attention to distances risk such an operation, if there was any possibility of an enemy interrupting its completion. This mode applies in many situations among trees, and where the ground is much impeded with bushes or obstacles which prevent marching on a platoon or a larger front.

When the new line (*c*) outflanks towards the point of intersection, then the regiment breaking to that hand, will have its head (*a*) nearer to the new line than its rear. When the new line (*B*) outflanks from the point of intersection, then the regiment breaking from that point will have its head (*b*) farther from the new line than its rear; but in this case the platoons must be so directed during the march, by making a kind of gradual wheel forward upon the rear, that the head (*b*) shall enter the new line before the rear arrives upon it. Fig. 50

§ 124....*When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into Open Column, marching up in Column to the Point where its Head is to remain, and entering the Line by filing its Platoons.*

Fig. 42. C.A. { The pivot flank of the column being directed on the adjutant (*c*), who marks the flank point in the new line, will HALT, when arrived within a few paces of him; a point of direction (*d*) beyond the adjutant is also immediately ascertained. The word FACE (to the right or left as is necessary to conduct into the new line) is then given and executed by all the platoons, and the serjeants begin to run out to mark their pivot points.—

HALT.

FACE.

- Q. MARCH. { At the word MARCH, the whole move in file; the head platoon places its pivot flank at a wheeling distance from the adjutant, and every other one in the manner before directed arrange themselves behind the head one, and behind each other; their flanks being corrected by the commanding officer, they are then ready to wheel up into line.—The facing and filing of the platoons will depend on which side of the adjutant they are to be arranged, and which way the the line is to face.
- Halt, Front.* {
- Dress.* {
- HALT. { When a regiment open column entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its front flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when its leading division is at a wheeling distance short of that point.

§ 125....*When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into Open Column.....Marching up to the Point where its Rear is to rest.....And entering the Line by the Wheeling of its Platoons.*

- Fig. 42. F. { Besides the adjutant who marks the point of entry, two advanced points of March must be given.—The regiment then enters by Wheels, and moves (as in § 115.), and when its last division is at its point, it receives the word HALT, and pivots being corrected, the whole are ready to wheel up into line.
- Wheel.* {
- Halt, Dress.* {
- March.* {
- HALT. {

A regiment open column entering a new position where its rear flank is to be placed.—If the wheels

are made to the pivot hand, it receives the word **HALT** when its rear division has just completed its wheel into the new direction.—If the wheels are made to the reverse hand, it receives the word **HALT** when the last division but one has completed its wheel into the new direction, and the last division itself files and places its pivot flank at the given point.—When a regiment open column, entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its rear flank is to be placed, it will receive the word **HALT** when the pivot of its rear division arrives at that point.

By these operations of entering a new line at the rear, or at the front point, will the distant changes of a considerable line generally be made; each regiment breaking from the old line, and entering the new one in separate column; the whole of which movement may be made in quick time; the regiments within themselves are at all times collected, there can hardly be any impediments from ground (where it is possible for troops to move at all) that can prevent the transit of the regiment column from the one point to the other: the line is taken up just, by placing the pivot flanks upon it, and the distances are most correct, being taken up in all cases from the front of the column.—Should the presence and nearness of an enemy make it too precarious, thus to change position in detached columns; the **ECHELON** March must then take place.

§ 126....*When the regiment changes Position by breaking into Open Column.....Marching up in Column, and entering the new Position at the Point where a General Division is to rest, and form in Line.*

Fig. 42. II.

It will often happen that the head of the regiment column must by wheeling enter the alignment at

a point not so far distant from where that head is to be placed in line: On its arrival there, the rear platoons cannot then have entered, but are stopped in the old direction by the cessation of movement in the front, it therefore becomes necessary immediately to bring those platoons into the alignment, that the regiment may justly form, and this is done by filing.

<i>Wheel.</i>	{	The leading platoon of the regiment having <i>wheeled</i> into the alignment followed by the others, when it arrives at the point where it is to form in line, the word HALT is given, and the column stops.—The leading platoon, and such others as may have already wheeled into the alignment, being now at their proper points, remain so, and the word FACE is then immediately given, when all the platoons who are still in the old direction face to the flank which conducts to their place in the new line.
<i>Halt, Dress, March.</i>		
HALT.		
Fig. 38.		
FACE.		
Q. MARCH.	{	At the word Q. MARCH, the serjeants mark their points in the line, and the platoons move and halt with their pivot flanks on it ready to wheel up into line.
<i>Halt, Front, Dress.</i>		

This movement includes both the operations of the regiment as entering a line where its rear is to rest, and where its front is to rest.

§ 127....*When the Regiment changes Position, by breaking into Open Column.....Marching up in Column to the Point where its Head Division remains placed in the new Position, and which its Rear Divisions enter on, by the Echellon March.*

Fig. 39.60.

{ The column will advance to the spot
 { where its leading division is to be placed :

HALT. { It will there receive the word HALT.—The leading division will, if necessary, be wheeled accurately into the new line; Each of the other divisions will wheel back on its reverse flank such a number of paces as is necessary to place it perpendicular to its point in the new line; the whole will

MARCH. MARCH, and successively form up to the leading division, by the echelon movement. (§ 158. 159.)

If the column halts perpendicular (A) to the new line, its divisions will wheel back 1-8th of the circle, or a half wheel.—If the column halts oblique (B) to the new line, the divisions will proportionally wheel, so as to be placed perpendicular to their future lines of march.

In this manner the divisions of the column arrive in full front, one after the other, in the new line.

§ 128....*When the Regiment changes Position, by breaking into Open Column.....Marching in Column to the Point in the new Position where its Head is to rest, and to which its Rear Divisions form, by successively passing each other and wheeling up.* Fig. 42, D.

Wheel up.
Halt, Dress.
March. { The column having arrived in the direction of, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the line, and at the point where its head is to rest, but which its rear is to pass, its leading division will wheel into the line, and halt; each other division continuing its March, will move on square behind the first formed division, at which point its leading officer

Fig. 40

Halt, Dress. { will, if necessary, shift to its inward flank, and each as it comes opposite to its ground will successively wheel, march up, and dress in line with those already in it.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will of course have its pivot flank on it, but as in this formation the wheel is made to the reverse hand, therefore before it begins, the regiment must shift the breadth of the column to bring the reverse flanks on the line, and be directed by them, the leading officers at the same time shifting.

In this manner the regiment does not stand in open column on the new line, but successively wheels up by divisions, and forms in full front on the given objects. It may be used when the direction of its march is nearly in the prolongation of the new line, and when a regiment, arriving on the flank of a line already formed, has to lengthen out that line.

§ 129.....*When the Regiment changes Position, by breaking into Open Column....Marching up perpendicular to the new Line, and to the point where its Head is to rest, and forming in the new position by the Evantail or Fan Movement.*

Fig. 41.42.

<p>TO THE... OBLIQUE. <i>Forward.</i> <i>Half Step.</i> HALT.</p>	{	<p>When the leading division (b), is at least the length of the regiment column behind its point in the new line, it shortens its step one half as soon as the others receive orders to OBLIQUE from the column; this they do 'till opposite their respective places, when each moves forward successively to the leading platoon and to each other, take up the half step, enter the new line in front, and the whole</p> <p>HALT.</p>
---	---	---

This movement is performed on the March, and must be begun at a distance behind the line proportioned to the body which is to oblique and form. It may be applied to one regiment, but hardly to a more considerable body, which would find great difficulty in the execution. It gives a gradual increase of front during a progressive movement. With justness it can be made on a front division only, not on a central or rear one: In proportion as the leading platoon shortens its step will the one behind it, and successively each other, come up into line with it. As soon as the colours of the regiment come up they become the leading point.

Although it is an operation of more difficulty, yet if the leading division continues the ordinary, and the obliquing ones take the quick step, till they successively are up with it, a regiment column which is placed behind the flank of a line, may in this manner, during the march, and when near to an enemy, gradually lengthen out that line.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE OPEN COLUMN MADE ON A FIXED POINT BY THE FILING OF COMPANIES.

The changes of position of a column are the same as those of a line, after that line has broken into column.

§ 130.....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes Position on a front fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the rest of the Column.*

That company is placed with its pivot flank in, and Fig. 34, perpendicular to, the new direction, and points before

it and behind it are given as directed for the regiment, the others FACE, MARCH, and cover it in the new line.

§ 131.....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes Position on its rear fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the rest of the Column.*

Fig. 34. Each company countermarches; the given company is placed....the change then becomes the same as on the front company. Each company again countermarches, and the column is in a situation to move on as before.

§ 132.....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes its Position on any Central fixed Company.*

Fig. 35. That company (a) is placed with its pivot flank in, and perpendicular to, the new direction, and points (c b) before and behind it are given, where the pivots of its adjoining companies are to be placed: all such as were in front of it countermarch and face it....The whole then Face to, and File from which ever (but the same nominal) flank, is required in order to cover before and behind the placed company, and to arrive in the new direction....The companies that face the placed one again Countermarches, and the column is in a situation to move on.

Should it be intended to form the line immediately after making the change of position, in that case the company which faces to, and is next the placed one, would take care to *halt* in the new position, with a double distance from the placed one, and the line would be immediately formed by the wheel up of companies, without making the second countermarch,

It is always to be remembered, that whenever two platoons *face* each other in the same column, with intention to form in line, they must have double distance, as they both *wheel inwards*, and meet on the line of formation. But when the column after changing position is to be countermarched in part, and proceed in the new direction, in that case no double distance is taken, and the necessary caution is given accordingly.

§ 133....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes to a distant Position in its Front.*

The column will march forward to some given point in that line, and then enter it, according to one of the prescribed modes at which its head, central, or rear division is to stand. Fig. 38.

§ 134....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes to a distant Position in its Rear.*

Each division of the column will countermarch, and it will then proceed, as having the position in its front. Fig. 38.

§ 135....*When a Regiment in Open Column changes to a distant Position to either Flank.*

The companies will File from the old into the new direction; or, if the position is distant, the head of the column will march towards it, and enter it as a position in front. Fig. 36.

§ 136....*When the Regiment Column with the Right in Front is to form to the Right Flank.*

If the regiment is required suddenly to be formed on the ground on which it then stands, the right pi-

vots will quickly be covered, and the divisions will wheel to the right into line : in this situation the divisions of the regiment will be inverted.

If no inversion is to take place, the formation will be a successive one, by the head division wheeling to the right, and the others marching on past it, and successively wheeling up. (§ 128.)

When the head of a column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its pivot hand, or by filing its divisions from its reverse hand, the formation made on that line, by wheeling up the divisions, will front towards the rear of the column.—

Fig. 44. When the head of the column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its reverse hand, or by filing its divisions from its pivot hand, the formation made on that line by wheeling up will front the same way as the head of the column did when advancing to the line.

Fig. 60. The open column forms in line on its front, rear, or central division, by the Echellon march, as in § 158.

The open column closes to close column on any named division, and forms in line by the deployments of the close column.

CLOSE COLUMN.

Applica-
tion of the
close co-
lumn.

1. The regiment close column is formed from the column of march, or from line. From the column of march it is generally formed for the purpose of assembly, or deploying into line. From line it is formed in order quickly, and in force to pass a defile, or bridge : to make an attack in certain confined si-

tuations, where circumstances make it eligible : to oppose, in ground where its flanks are not protected, a threatened charge of cavalry : to facilitate movements to the front, flanks, or rear, from which afterwards any other distances may be taken, or the line may be formed in the most expeditious manner.

2. The close column will generally be composed of companies for the purposes of movement : But when it is halted, and is to deploy into line, it will then stand two companies in front, and five in depth.

3. The same general circumstances apply to the close column as to the open column. When the close column is formed, rear ranks are one foot asunder, divisions are one pace asunder : Officers and serjeants are on the pivot flanks of their companies : Colours and supernumery officers and serjeants are on the flanks, not the pivot ones : Music, drummers, pioneers, are ordered into the rear of the column : Artillery is either in the front, or on the reverse flank of the column when in march.

4. The commanding officer alone gives orders to the close column for its MARCH, HALT, and commencement of formation.

5. The regiment close column may be formed from line ; in front, or rear of either of the flank companies ; or in front, and rear of any central company. Formation
to Front or
rear.

6. *If the Column is to stand faced as the line is,* the regiment will face INWARDS, or to the directing company, each other company will disengage its head, march, and place itself as ordered before or behind that company.

7. *If the Column is to stand faced to the rear of the line,* then the directing company will counter-march on its own ground, the regiment will face OUTWARDS, or from the directing company, each other company will disengage its head, and move in file.

towards its place in the close column, by this means accomplishing a countermarch of the whole, and the column standing fronted to its former rear.

FORMATION OF CLOSE COLUMN FROM LINE.

§ 137....*Before or behind either of the Flank Companies.*

- Fig. 46. { A CAUTION will be given mentioning the company, and whether the formation is in front or rear of it.—The regiment will then be FACED to that company and the heads of the other companies will disengage to which ever hand naturally conducts them towards their place in the close column:
- TO THE.... { The officers and their covering serjeants post themselves at the head of their files ready to lead; the officer of the named company shifts, if necessary, to that flank which is to become the pivot one of the column, and his serjeant also places himself 6 or 8 paces before or behind him (according to circumstances) to mark the perpendicular of the front of the column.
- FACE. {
- QUICK { The whole will MARCH QUICK to the front or rear of the company ordered to be formed on, and each leader will proceed in the same manner as in forming an open column from line (except that the serjeants do not run out), stopping in his own person at his pivot point, and giving his words
- MARCH. {

Halt, Front,
Dress. { *Halt, Front—Dress*, to his company,
when it has arrived upon the proper
ground on which it is to stand in close
column.

During the formation of all close columns, as soon as the regiment is put in motion, the commanding officer will immediately place himself in front of the column, before the officer of the named company, and from thence judging the perpendicular of the column, will attend to the officers covering each other in that direction as they come up, whether such covering is taken from the front or from the rear, which will depend on the formation of the column.

§ 138....*On a Central Company.*

Fig. 46. { A CAUTION of formation is given.
—The named company will stand fast,
INWARDS, and the regiment will face *INWARDS*;
FACE. the heads of companies will disengage
according as they are to be in front, or
rear, the officer of the named compa-
QUICK, ny will place himself on its future pi-
MARCH. vot flank, and at the word *MARCH*, the
rest of the formation will proceed as
before directed, part of the regiment
Halt, Front, arranging itself before, and part behind
Dress. the given company, and the officers
covering on the proper pivot flank.

1. In the same manner in which close columns are here formed from line on any given division, by facing and disengaging, may columns at half or quarter distance also generally be formed; observing that in such cases the covering serjeants run out to mark their respective flank points, as in the formation in open column.

Fig. 47. 48.

OUTWARDS
FACE.

2. In forming close column facing to the rear, the same operations takes place, as to the front, with this difference—That the CAUTION expresses what is to be done; that the named division *countermarches*; that the other divisions of the regiment FACE OUTWARDS from it, and lead from their farthest flanks, in order to establish the countermarch of the whole.

3. The close column is formed from column of march, by *halting* the head division, and ORDERING the other to close up, and *Halt* successively.—Or, by the head division continuing its March, and the rear ones being ordered to MARCH QUICK into close column, and successively to resume the ordinary march.

The close column marches to its flank to deploy; to correct intervals; to gain an enemy's flank; or for some other particular purpose: But a considerable movement to front or rear cannot be made without loosening its divisions and ranks.

§ 139.....*When the Column marches to a Flank.*

COLUMN
WILL MARCH
TO THE.....

A Caution will express to which flank it is to march; if to that which is not the pivot, the leading officers and serjeants of each will move quickly by the rear of their divisions to that flank; and the supernumerary officers and serjeants and colours, who were on that flank, will exchange to the other.

RIGHT(or left)
FACE.
Q. MARCH.

The whole will then FACE, and be put in MARCH, the officer that leads the front division taking care

{ to march in the exact alignement, and all the others in preserving their proper situations, Dress and move by him.... When the column HALTS, FRONTS, the pivot officers and serjeants, &c. &c. are ordered to shift to their proper places (if not already there) by the rear of their respective divisions.

§ 140.... *When the Column marches to the Front.*

MARCH.	{	The whole step off at the word MARCH, or QUICK MARCH. If it is meant to loosen ranks of the column, a CAUTION so to do will be given, on which all the divisions except the leading one will <i>step short</i> , and each successively from its leader will receive the word <i>step out</i> when his ranks are one pace asunder. If a general word HALT is given, the whole column halts as it is then placed; but if a partial and low word <i>Halt</i> is given to the leading division only, the others still move on, and <i>Halt</i> successively in close column by word from their leaders.
LOOSE.		
RANKS.		
<i>Step out.</i>		
HALT.	{	
<i>Halt.</i>		

§ 141.... *When the Column halted is to take a new Direction.*

A CAUTION will be given that it is to change direction either to the right or left; on which the officers and serjeants, if not already there, shift to the flanks that are to lead.... The front division of the co-

lumn is placed in the new direction, and an advanced point is given to determine the future line of pivots.

.....FACE.	{	The other divisions will FACE as ordered, and MARCH, quick.....Each division separately when it arrives at its point which the serjeants may give, will <i>Halt, Front</i> , and cover in column. Officers and serjeants will again shift to their pivot flanks, if necessary, and the covering of pivots be perfected.
Q. MARCH.		
<i>Halt, Front,</i>		
<i>Dress.</i>		

§ 142....*When the Column marching, changes Direction.*

If gradual and inconsiderable changes of direction, are to be made during the march of the column, the head will step short, and will on a moveable pivot gradually effect such change, while all the other divisions, by advancing a SHOULDER, and inclining up to the flank, which is the wheeling one, will successively conform to each other, and to the leading division, so that the whole at the word FORWARD may move on as before.

§ 143....*When the Column is to make Front to its Rear by Countermarching.*

Fig. 53.	{	If the divisions are at a sufficient distance, they will each separately countermarch as directed for the open column.—If the column is quite close, the whole Face from the pivot flank; the even or every other division (reckoning from the head) will March on till its rear has quitted the column 3 or 4 paces, they then are
THE COLUMN		
WILL		
COUNTERMARCH.		
.....FACE.		
EVEN DIVISIONS.		
Q. MARCH.		
HALT.		

THE WHOLE
COUNTERMARCH.
Q. MARCH.

Halt, front. Dress.

ordered to Countermarch towards the column, and at the same word the odd divisions which have hitherto stood still, countermarch also each on its own ground: the even divisions march on till they are again in column in their proper places, and *Halt, Front.*


DEPLOYMENT OF THE CLOSE COLUMN INTO LINE.

1. The regiment close column forms in line, on its front, on its rear, or on any central division by the DEPLOYMENT, or flank march, and by which it successively uncovers and extends its several divisions.

2. Before the close column deploys, its head division whether it is halted or in movement, must be on the line into which it is to extend. That line is therefore the prolongation of the head division, and such points in it, to one or both flanks as are necessary for the formation of the regiment are immediately taken.

3. The flank March must be made, firm, marked, at the deploy step, parallel to the general line and without opening out, the most particular precision is therefore required. Each division when opposite to its ground, will be most advantageously FRONTED, or at least corrected by a mounted officer of its own regiment, in case that its leader should not be critical in his commands, or that he should not be heard, or that his files are too open; and thus may the de-

Attentions
in the de-
ployment.



fects of a preceding division be remedied, by the judicious stop of the one following it : The division is then brought up into line by its respective leader.... The justness of formation depends altogether on officers judging their distances, and timing their commands. The officer who leads his division up into line must take great care that it does not overshoot its ground ; his dressing is always from the last come up division, towards the other flank, and the eyes of all are turned to that division.

4. As the head of the close column is always brought up to the line on which it is to extend ; therefore when the formation is made on the rear, or on a central division, such division when uncovered, must move up to the identical ground which the front has quitted. The method formerly practised of throwing back such divisions as are before that of formation is improper, and will not apply where several regiments, or columns, are to form in the same line.

5. In the passage of the obstacle, parts of the regiment are required to form in close column, and again deploy into line, although the division formed upon continues to be moveable.

6. Before any column deploys, the divisions are well closed up and square, and music, drummers, &c. are in its rear, or on the flank not the leading one, that the movement may not be embarrassed.

WHEN THE REGIMENT CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES (*THE RIGHT IN FRONT*) DEPLOYS INTO LINE.

§ 144.....*On a Front Division.*

Fig. 49.

FORM LINE
ON THE
FRONT DIVISION.

The column being halted with its front division in the alignment, and all the others in their true situations parallel, and well closed up to it, a point of forming upon and dressing is taken, in the prolongation of that division (and corrected from it,) just beyond where the left of the regiment is to extent D..... A Caution is then given that the line will form on the front division.

LEFT, FACE.

Q. MARCH.

At the word to the Left Face, the front division stands fast, its officer shifting to the right, and all the others face.... At the word March they step off quick with heads dressed, moving parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation; the files also are close and compact, without opening out.

Halt Front.
Dress,

The officer of the second or leading division having stepped out to the right at the above word March, allows his division led by his serjeant to go on a space equal to its front, and then gives his word *Halt, Front—Dress*, his

March.

Halt, Dress.

Halt, Front.

Dress.

March.

Halt, Dress.

serjeant still remaining on the left of the division. He then being on the right of his division immediately gives his word *March*, and the division proceeds at the ordinary step towards its place in the alignment....: The officer having in the mean time stepped nimbly forward, places himself before the left flank of the preceding division and is thus ready to give the word *Halt, Dress*. at the instant his inward flank man joins that division: He then expeditiously corrects his men (who have dressed upon the former part of the line) on the distant given point, and resumes his proper post in line.

In this manner every other division proceeds, each being successively (by its officer who himself stops on the left flank of the division which precedes him) *Fronted, Marching up, Halted, and Dressed* in line: The officers of these divisions as each approaches within 5 or 6 paces of its ground, then stepping up to the flank of his preceding formed division, that he may the more accurately *Halt, Dress*, his own; and the flank serjeant of each remaining at his point in the line till the succeeding officer having so dressed his division comes to replace him; he then covers his own officer.

§ 145.....*On the Rear Division.*

The column being placed as before directed and a point of forming (D.) taken to the right in the prolon-

gation of the head division, and just beyond where the right of the regiment is to come.

FORM LINE
ON THE
REAR
DIVISION.

A Caution is given that the line will form on the rear division; on which the officers commanding divisions, and their serjeants, immediately pass behind their several divisions, and post themselves on the right of each; an under officer is sent from the rear division to place himself correctly close to and before the left flank file of the front division; and the leader of the front division is shewn the distant point (D.) in the alignement on which he is to march, taking his intermediate points if necessary.

RIGHTFACE.

The word to the Right Face is then given, on which all the divisions except the rear one, face to the right.

Q. MARCH.

.....At the word March, the faced divisions step off quick, the heads of files are dressed to the left, the front one moves in the alignement, and the others parallel and close on its right.

March.

As soon as the rear division is uncovered, it receives the word *March*; on this the division proceeds, and when within a few paces of its ground, its officer steps nimbly up to the detached under officer who marks its left in the new position, he there in due time gives his words *Halt, Dress*, and quickly corrects his division on the distant point of formation, this done he replaces his serjeant on the right of his division.

Halt, Dress.

Halt, Front.
Dress.

March.

Halt, Dress.

Halt, Front.
Dress.

In the mean time the commander of the division which immediately preceded the rear one, having at the first word MARCH, stepped nimbly round to the rear of his division, without impeding its movement, and having allowed it to move on led by a serjeant, gives his words, *Halt, Front—Dress*, when his division has marched a distance equal to its front, and thereby uncovered the one behind it, which immediately moves forward; he then places himself on its left, and his serjeant remains on its right....As soon as his own front is clear he gives his word *March*, on which his division proceeds, he himself when proper, advances to the right of the preceding division then on the line, and from thence gives his words *Halt, Dress*, when his own left file joins such right; he corrects his division on the right, and then replaces his own serjeant.

All the other divisions successively proceed in the same manner, until the right one (which has been marching critically in the alignement, and on no account getting before it) receives when it arrives on its just ground the words, *Halt, Front—Dress*.

§ 146.....*On a Central Division.*

Fig.51. Forming point (D. D.) must be given to both flanks in the prolongation of the head division.....

THE LINE
WILL FORM
ON.....
DIVISION.
OUTWARDS
FACE.
Q. MARCH.

{ At the Caution of forming on a central division, the leading officers will shift accordingly.—The divisions in front of the named one face to one flank; those in rear of it to the other, according to the hand which leads to their ground. The named division when uncovered moves up into line to its marked flank: Those that were in front of it proceed as in forming on a rear division: Those that were in rear of it proceed as in forming on a front division.

§ 147.....*When the close Column of Companies forms Column of two Companies, or Grand Divisions.*

ALTERNATE COMPANIES WILL
FORM COLUMN OF
GRAND DIVISIONS.
.....FACE.
Fig. 52. 54.
MARCH.

{ On the Caution that the alternate companies from the front will form grand divisions, all supernumeraries, &c. but not the colours, go to the rear of the column if not already there. At the word Face, the alternate companies face (always to the pivot flank) and their officers then take one step sideways, so as to be clear of their rank. At the word March the officers stand fast, the serjeant of each conducts the division, and the officer of each when it has cleared the standing division, gives the words *Halt, Front.....Dress.....March* and *Halt, Dress* when he arrives at the one he is to join, his serjeant being on the flank of his division in the same manner as in deploying into line.

Halt, Front.
Dress.
March.
Halt, Dress.

The colours remain with their proper division in the column and that division must of course outflank on the hand not the pivot one.

CLOSE
DISTANCE
TO
THE FRONT.
MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

The officers and serjeants now shift their places, and take post (whether the column has its right or left in front) so that the right company of each division has its officer and its serjeant on its right, or in the centre of the division. A Caution is given to close distance to the front. The divisions move at the word March, by the pivot flanks, and each pivot officer gives his words *Halt, Dress*, when his division has closed. The close column is then ready to deploy or to march.

WHEN THE CLOSE COLUMN OF TWO COMPANIES
IN FRONT, IS TO DEPLOY.

§ 148....*On the Front Division.*

THE LINE
WILL FORM ON
THE FRONT
DIVISION.
.....FACE.

Q. MARCH.

HALT, FRONT.

The CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and attendant circumstances prepared. —The divisions that are to move, receive the word FACE, (always in this case to the pivot flank.... They move in file at the word MARCH.... A mounted officer gives, successively and in due time to each division the word HALT, FRONT. —The inward officer of each division when it has halted and fronted gives

Dress.
March.
Halt, Dress.
 Fig. 49.

his words *Dress....March....Halt, Dress*, and the outward officer assists him by remaining on the flank of the division in the line, in the same manner that the serjeant does for the company.—The left officer then replaces his serjeant on the right of his proper company.

In this manner division after division comes up into line, and the supernumeraries, &c. also gradually take their places in the rear.

§ 149.....*On the Rear Division.*

.....FACE.
 MARCH.
 HALT, FRONT.
Dress.
March.
Halt, Dress.

March.
Halt, Dress.

The Caution of deployment is given, the line is prolonged and an under officer sent from the rear division to the pivot flank of the front one....The divisions that are to move receive the word FACE (which in this case is always from the pivot flank....) They move in file at the word MARCH.

The division that is immediately before the rear one, as soon as it has uncovered the rear one receives from the mounted officer the word HALT, FRONT, and *Dress* from its inward or pivot officer; and at that instant the rear one is ordered to *March* forward by its pivot flank, and to *Halt*, and *Dress* in the line.... The division which preceded the rear one, and is now halted and fronted when it is itself uncovered, in consequence of the movement of those before it, is also ordered to *March* forward and to *Halt*, and *Dress* in the line.

HALT, FRONT.

Dress.

March.

Halt, Dress.

In this manner each division as it uncovers the one behind it, successively HALTS, FRONTS by command from the mounted officer, and when it is uncovered is brought up into line by its own inward officer, aided by the outward officer.....This done the left officer replaces his serjeant, who has preserved his post in the front rank.

§ 150.....*On a Central Division.*

OUTWARDS,

FACE.

Q. MARCH.

HALT, FRONT.

The double operation of forming on a front and rear division is required.....The CAUTION of deployment is given.....The divisions FACE outwards.....MARCH.....and there must be an officer to HALT, FRONT, those of each wing.....The individual divisions proceed as already directed.

The column must always be well closed up, before it deploys.——When it deploys on a front division, it faces to the pivot flank which then becomes the leading one.——When it deploys on the rear division it faces from the pivot flank which then becomes the following one.

The close column when it forms on a front, or rear division may either be halted, or in motion to its flank.—From this situation of the flank march it is, that every regiment is required to begin the deploy when forming in line with others, and must therefore be much practised by the regiment when single.—Viz.—After the column has been placed in the alignment, it is FACED according as it is intended to form on the front, or rear division, and is then put in

MARCH, its head division following the alignement : At any instant the division to be formed upon is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and the others without stopping proceed and deploy upon it ; if it is the front one it is already in the line ; if it is the rear one the point which it comes up to remains marked for it. When the formation is on a central division, it must always begin from the halt of the close column.

The single regiment should also in exercise deploy on the front division when in march, as it is the method by which the line is reformed after passing an obstacle, and of lengthening out the flank of a line that may be in movement.

OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENTS.

Although the quickest, most exact, and general method of deployments requires that the regiment before deploying should stand perpendicular to the line on which it is to form, yet it may sometimes happen that the immediate deployment of a column may be demanded, on a line oblique, to the one on which it then stands, and that circumstances do not permit of the previous operation of placing it perpendicular to that line.

§ 151....*If the Deployment is to be made on an Oblique Line advanced.*

The front division is wheeled up into the new direction on its REVERSE flank, and the line is prolonged to D.—The column is FACED to the hand it deploys to.—The leaders of divisions then turn their bodies

Fig. 55.
B.

so as each to take a direction parallel to the given one.—The whole are put in MARCH, and the rear of the divisions gradually get into the square direction of their heads which proceed and form as usual. In this movement the heads of the divisions will be a little retired behind each other : The rear leaders will take great care not to close on each other, nor to the hand which conducts them : much precision is also required in justly timing the HALT, FRONT, of each division, which by that time ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the line of formation.

§ 152.....*If the Deployment is to be made on an Oblique Line retired.*

Fig. 55. The front division is wheeled up on its PIVOT flank into the new direction, and the line is prolonged to D.—The same operation, though more difficult, takes place as when the line is advanced, and the rear divisions must take particular care to ease from, and yield to, the march of the front.—The head division being advanced a few paces before it takes the oblique direction will give a facility to the heads of the rear files, in gradually gaining it.

Such deployment can hardly be required on any other than the front division of the close column ; particular attention is necessary to give every aid as to the point of forming, and to the heads of divisions moving as soon as possible in the true direction parallel to and behind the line.—Should a column be ordered to form on the rear, or on a central division, although the principles would be the same as on the front, and as in the other rear or central deployments ; yet the execution would be very difficult, and demand great circumspection in the commanders of regiments.

§ 153.....*When the Close Column halted is to form in Line in the Prolongation of its Flank, and on either the Front, Rear, or a Central Division.*

The CAUTION of formation is given. The named division stands fast, the others MARCH forward in close column in the given line : Their pivot officers successively take wheeling distance from each other, beginning at the named one, and successively give their word *Halt* as each has acquired it : When the whole is in open column the line is formed by a wheel up to the flank.—In this manner distances are begun to be taken from the rear ; but when the named division is a front or central one, the others that are behind it must FACE ABOUT, MARCH forward, take their distances, and *front* successively.

The column may also be opened from any named division, by the leading one only marching off, and each other successively following, as wheeling distance is acquired from the one preceding : When the whole have opened, the general word HALT is given, or the column is allowed to proceed.

ECHELLON

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE REGIMENT,

BY THE MOVEMENTS OF THE

ECHELLON COLUMN OF COMPANIES.

1. The Echellon position and movements are not only necessary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies, but also to the previous oblique or direct changes of situation, which a regiment or a more considerable corps already formed in line, may be obliged to make to the front or rear, on a particular fixed division of the line.

Utility of the Echellon of March, in changes of position.

How
formed.

2. The oblique changes are produced by the wheel less than the quarter circle of divisions from line, which places them in the Echellon situation. The direct changes are produced by the perpendicular and successive march of divisions from line, to front, or rear.

Fig. 57.

How
applied.

3. The march in line, or in the direct Echellon B, produces new parallel positions to front or rear.—The march in Echellon C. when formed by the wheels of the divisions from line, produces new oblique positions, to front or rear, according to the degree of wheel given to the Echellon. The march in open column A. produces new prolonged positions to either flank.

Echellon
formed by
wheels of
companies

4. The Echellon of march, necessary in making changes of situation, will be composed of companies or sub-divisions, and generally formed from line by the wheel of each on its own flank to the hand to which it is to move. Such wheel will seldom exceed the eighth of the circle, but can never amount to the quarter circle, otherwise the body would stand in open column.

Echellon
column.

5. The Echellon of march may be considered as a column of a particular kind, as well as the open column, and is easily converted into such.

Differen-
ces and
agreement
of the open
column
and Echel-
lon.

6. All the divisions of an open column A. march upon one and the same perpendicular and are therefore easily conducted.—All the divisions of an echellon B. C. move on different perpendiculars, each on its own, but all of them parallel to the directing one, and removed from each other a space equal to what the divisions cut within each other.—In open column the perpendicular distance from division to division is equal to the front of the following one. In Echellon the smaller the wheel is, the smaller is the perpendicular distance from division to division, till it vanishes into nothing: but in all situations of the wheeled

Fig. 57.

Echellon, the oblique distance from flank to flank is equal to the front of the preceding division.—In open column the proper pivot flank is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it, into column backward, and into line forward. In Echellon the reverse flank (or that which first joins its preceding division, when the line is to be formed forward), is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it, into Echellon forward, and into line backward.—In open column each division preserves a distance from flank to flank equal to its own front. In Echellon each preserves a distance from flank to flank equal to the front of its preceding division. An Echellon may at any time be converted into the open column, by wheeling up its divisions till they stand perpendicular to the line which passes through all its directing flanks. An open column may in the same manner be converted into the Echellon column, by wheeling back its divisions, each a named number of paces, and on either flank, according to circumstances.

7. The wheel from line into open column is easily ascertained, by the perpendicular halt of each division on that line; but the parallelism of the wheels into Echellon, which is a circumstance that is essential, and decides the justness of the movement, is more difficult to be determined; for, being confined to no certain portion of the circle, such cannot well be announced or executed as a direction, and therefore *a given number of paces to be wheeled by bodies of equal strength*, and which serve as so many parallel bases of formation, may be the best general order that can be given.

Method of
forming
Echellon
by wheels
from line.

8. If the companies of a regiment, or more considerable body, were all of equal strength, and should the outward man of each take the same number of paces on the circumference of the circle which he describes, they will after the wheel stand parallel among themselves: but if those companies are unequal, they

will then not be parallel to each other, and consequently not in a proper relative situation.....Though such equality may exist in a single regiment, it will seldom or never exist in a line of regiments, and a different calculation and direction for each regiment, corresponding to their strengths, appears necessarily to be required, whenever they are in concert to change position.....This difficulty may be obviated by adopting a *practical rule* as well for the regiment as for the line, on all occasions of wheeling by companies into Echellon, in order to change position, and of whatever strength the companies may be, viz. *That each covering serjeant, as the case requires, having previously placed himself before or behind a given file (the 8th) from the standing flank shall take the named number of wheeling paces, and thereby become a direction for the company to wheel up to, and halt:* as in § 154. 156.....As eight paces of the eighth file complete the quarter circle or WHEEL, so four paces give the HALF WHEEL, and two paces the QUARTER WHEEL, all which are wheels often made from open column, or from line, to change to a position perpendicular, or more or less oblique to the one quitted: and these degrees, with the helps given by advancing or keeping back a shoulder as is necessary, during the movement, will perhaps suffice to arrive and form in any new direction with precision.

General
situation
of the di-
recting
files of
Echellon.

9. The flank directing files of Echellons, whether they are formed by the perpendicular march of divisions successively from line to the front, or by the wheels of divisions from line to the flank, will at first and should always afterwards be found in a diagonal, line with respect to the front of divisions: In the first case A. the distance from flank to flank depends on the interval which the divisions are ordered to march off at: In the second case B. such distance is always the same, and equal to the front of the division which has wheeled forward, and which by wheel-

Fig. 58.

ing back would exactly fill it up.....Whenever therefore the directing flanks of an Echellon are all in the same line, and each distant from its preceding one, a space equal to the front of the preceding division, such Echellon is in a situation by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, as in § 156, or to take a position forward as in § 162.

10. In the Echellon march, such division or divisions as may meet with obstacles, will file round them without deranging the adjoining divisions, who preserve the necessary vacant spaces and distances 'till the broken divisions can again take their places. Passing
obstacles.

11. When a change of position or march to the rear is to be made in Echellon, the regiment or line will in general FACE about, WHEEL into Echellon, and then proceed.....Or, it may be ordered first to WHEEL back into Echellon, then FACE about, and proceed as above. Changes
to the rear
in Echel-
lon.



CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE REGIMENT FROM LINE, BY THE ECHELLON MARCH OF COMPANIES.

1. When the outward flank men of the company formed three deep is ordered to wheel up three paces, or, if formed two deep, to wheel up two paces, such wheel is sufficient to disengage its rear rank from the front of the following one.....In such situation a certain small degree of inclination may be gained to flank, in proportion to the front of the company which has so wheeled, and the adherence of the several companies close behind each others flank, should facilitate the operation : but when a greater degree of inclination to the flank is required, then a more considerable wheel up by companies is made, that each may thereby be placed in the perpendicular direction which it is to pursue.

2. It has been observed, that the degree of wheel into Echellon is always less than the quarter circle, and that the 8th file from the standing flank is always the one to which the named number of wheeling paces (33 inches each) is applied, in order to ensure the parallelism of the companies, however unequal they may be, and whether they wheel backward or forward....Also, that the degree of wheel made from line into Echellon is always such as is required to conduct the divisions in a perpendicular direction to their future points; and this required degree must be determined by trial, or by the eye of the commander, before he announces his order to HALF WHEEL..... QUARTER WHEEL.....OR WHEEL any named number of paces, as 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.

§ 154....*When a Regiment from Line Wheels forward by Companies to either Flank into Echellon, and Halts.*

COMPANIES,
WHEEL
FORWARD.....
PACES TO THE...

Fig. 64. A.

1. At the general CAUTION, that the companies will wheel forward so many paces to the right or left, so as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march, the officer, if not already there, moves to the named flank of his company, and the covering serjeant of each at the same time runs out, places himself before the 8th file from the named flanks immediately takes the said number of wheeling paces, on the circumference of the circle of which his flank man is the centre, and then stands fast with his body turned in the line of that flank

{ man, who also faces into the line of his serjeant.... The whole serjeants ought thus to be in a line, but if any small correction is necessary, it will immediately by the commanding officer be made from the leading flank.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

{ At the word MARCH, each company wheels up, 'till its 8th file arrives close behind the serjeant, at which time the officer who is on the standing flank gives his word *Halt, Dress*, eyes are turned toward him, and the dressing being completed, the serjeant places himself on the outward wheeling flank.

In this situation the flanks wheeled to, remain in an exact line, and also the wheeling flanks, if the divisions are of equal strength: but in proportion to the degree of wheel which has been made will the perpendicular raised from the standing flank of each division cut within the division preceding it, 'till by the complete wheel of the quarter circle all such perpendicular coincide, and beyond that, new Echellon situations begin to the rear.

2. When the movement is to be to the rear instead of the front, in that case the regiment will in general FACE to the right about and WHEEL forward into Echellon in the before manner, proceeding as if the line was in its proper front.

3. Or the regiment may occasionally be first ordered to WHEEL BACK into Echellon (as in § 158), and then to FACE ABOUT, and MARCH to the rear: they thus do not stand for any time unnecessarily faced to the rear, previous to the operation of marching, which is a circumstance to be avoided as much as possible.

§ 155.....*When a Regiment, having from Line wheeled into Echellon, Marches forward and Halts ; ready to form in such direction as shall be required.*

MARCH.

Fig. 64. A.

HALT.

The companies standing thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the pivot or flanks wheeled to, at the word MARCH, the whole move on at the ordinary step, each flank on its own perpendicular ; each officer is now attentive to preserve the distance he marched off at from his preceding pivot, and also his oblique covering in the line of pivots, which remain always parallel to the original line ; this requires the greatest care, being an operation more difficult than moving in open column, where all the pivots cover each other in the same line.....These circumstances observed, the Echellon may at any instant be ordered to HALT, and will then be in a situation ready to form up, parallel or oblique to the line it quitted.....If parallel, by each division wheeling back to the flank of the one immediately behind it. If oblique, by the divisions moving up into the direction which the leading one then has, or is to be placed in, as is hereafter directed.

The Echellon can at no time march in any other direction than in the one to which it stands perpendicular, except that an oblique march of the whole divisions should be required from it. During the march, the same great regulating circumstances that direct the open column direct the Echellon, viz. the preservation of distance from the preceding leading flank, and the diagonal lining or covering of all those flanks,

at the same time that the perpendiculars of march are preserved by each division.—Could the march in Echellon be always executed with the greatest accuracy, each flank leader, covering a certain file of his preceding division, at a certain distance, would ensure exactness: but this alone is not to be trusted to, and is rather to be considered as an aid than as an invariable rule: the unsteady or open march of one or more divisions, if productive of a waving or shifting of the following ones, would in a sensible manner influence the whole.—If the leaders of the two head divisions do preserve an equal and steady pace under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps close on the flank of the first one, and gives such direction to the second as are necessary for preserving the parallelism of the march; those two will serve as a base line on which all the others should cover.—In this, as in every other case, the perfect perpendicular march of the first leader, in consequence of his body being truly placed, and his attention solely given to this object, is what will much determine the precision and justness of the whole.

§ 156..... *When the Regiment, having Wheeled from Line into Echellon, has Marched, and Halted, and is to form back, parallel to the Line it quitted.*

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.	{	A CAUTION is given that the companies wheel back into line; on which the pivot men face into the line, and the officers take one step forward.—
MARCH,		At the word MARCH, each company wheel back to the new pivot, and on receiving from its officer the word
<i>Halt, Dress.</i>	{	<i>Halt, Dress</i> , eyes are turned towards him.... The line being completely form-

Fig. 64. B.

ed, officers and serjeants (if not already there) move to their respective places in line, except in the occasional case of wheeling into line, in the middle of a change of position.—For, officers do not then shift from their leading flanks (unless ordered,) but remain there ready to fire, and to wheel again into Echellon, to resume the march, when the supposed sudden attack of cavalry is repulsed.

¶ 157.....*When the Regiment, having Wheeled from Line into Echellon, has Marched and Halted, and is to form up oblique to the Line it quitted.*

Fig. 59. Various circumstances attend the execution according to the degree of wheel which must be given to the leading company, in order to place it in the required oblique position; and as the number of paces which have been already wheeled from line into Echellon, determine the nature of the Echellon, they are an essential part of the following arrangements.

Fig. 59. 1. *If the formation is made forward*, and the leading company is wheeled up the same number of paces that it before wheeled from line into Echellon, then the others without altering their situation move on, and successively dress up with it.—In this manner does one or more regiments make their changes of position on a flank or central company of the line.

Fig. 59. 2. *If its wheel up exceeds* that number of paces, the others wheel up one half of that excess, move on, and successively dress up with it.

3. *If its wheel up is less* than that number of paces the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, after deducting one half of

what the leading division has now wheeled forward ; they then move on, and dress up with it.

4. *If the formation is to be on the prolongation* of the front division as it stands, the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dress up with it.

5. *If the leading division has to wheel back* into the new position, the others wheel back (in addition to the one half of what they originally wheeled forward) half of what the leading division has now wheeled, move on, and dress up with it.

All these specified wheelings are in order to make the divisions stand perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation, which lines change in consequence of the position given by the leading division.

§ 158.....*When from Open column, the Companies Wheel backward into Echellon, in order to form in Line on the Head Company.*

The head company either remains square to the column, or is wheeled forward on either flank into the indented direction of the line, and on the position given it, will depend the relative one which is taken by the other companies, and which the commander will determine to himself, by his eye, or by immediate trial.

COMPANIES, WHEEL BACKWARD,... PACES ON THE.....	{	1. On the CAUTION, that the companies except the head one will wheel back on the right or left so many paces (and which wheel is always backwards, and always on the reverse flank of the column, as being that which afterwards first comes into line,) the officer moves	Fig. 60. A.C.
---	---	--	------------------

Fig. 39. A. B.

MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

to that flank, and the serjeant of each places himself with his back to the 8th file of the rear rank, immediately takes his named paces, and halts fronts with his body turned in the line of the flank man on whom he wheeled.—At the word MARCH, the company wheels back till the 8th file of the rear rank touches the breast of the serjeant, (who gives a low caution to halt) it is then halted and dressed by the officer from the standing flank, the serjeant places himself on the outward flank, and the whole are now in a situation to march forward, and form in line on the head company, as in § 159.

2. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company of the column*; that company would remain placed; the others would FACE ABOUT—wheel BACK on the pivot flanks of the column, as being those which afterwards first come into line—MARCH—and then *Halt, front* successively in the line of the rear company.

3. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company, but facing to the rear*: The whole column would first countermarch, each company by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front company.

4. *If the line was to be formed on a central company, of the column*: That company would stand fast, or be wheeled on its own centre into a new required direction.—Those in front of it would be ordered to FACE about. The whole except the central compa-

Fig. 60. ny would WHEEL back the named number of paces; those in its front on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and those in its rear on the reverse flanks, such being the flanks that first arrive in line. The whole would then MARCH into line with the central

company, as in § 161....If the column was a retiring one, and the line was to front to the rear, the divisions must each countermarch before the formation begun, and the head would be thrown back and the rear forward.

§ 159.....*When the Regiment changes Position to the Front, on a fixed Flank Company, by throwing forward the rest of the Regiment.*

When the commander has determined the new line to be taken, by placing a person, (*a*) in it, 20 or 30 paces beyond the fixed flank; he orders the serjeant from before the 8th file of the flank company to wheel up into that line, thereby to ascertain the number of paces required. He then directs that company to be wheeled and halted in the new position, and the adjutant to prolong the line as far as the moving flank of the regiment will extend.

COMPANIES
WHEEL
FORWARD.

PACES,
TO THE....
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

{ The CAUTION is then given to the other companies, to wheel towards it, half the number of paces, that the flank one has done, for thereby will each stand perpendicular to the line, which is drawn from its flank in the old line to its relative flank point in the new one, and it is along such line that each will move. The regiment wheels into echelon as in § 154.

MARCH.

{ The officer being on the inner, and the serjeant on the outer flank of each company, the whole except the fixed company will move on at the word MARCH as directed in § 155.

Fig. 59.
A.
Fig. 64.
C.

.....*Shoulder
forward.*

Halt, Dress up,

.....*Shoulder
forward.*

When the officer conducting the second company approaches within 7 or 8 paces (and not sooner) of where his leading flank is to join the first company already placed, he gives a word.....*Shoulder* (the outward one) *forward*, on which the man next to himself preserving the same step gradually turns his shoulder, so as to arrive on the new line square in his own person ; and the rest of his division (who till this instant have marched in their original perpendicular direction) conforming to him and proportionally lengthening their step, arrive in full parallel front on the line, so as to have a very small movement to make at the word *Halt, Dress up*, which is given by the officer when his leading flank touches the flank of his preceding company : he himself having nimbly stepped forward when at 3 or 4 paces distance, and being then before that flank, instantly halts his men, and corrects them on the distant given point, their eyes being turned towards him, and the formed division.

In this manner company will come up after company (or division of whatever kind after division) each following one, observing to give the word....*Shoulder forward*, when the preceding one get the word *Halt, dress up*, and each officer stepping up to before the flank of his preceding formed company when he is

Halt, Dress up. { within 3 or 4 paces of it, that he may the more quickly and accurately give his word *Halt, Dress up*, to his own men, which they are to do preserving the cadenced step of the division, and not suddenly springing backward or forward. The serjeants will remain in the line till they are relieved by the officers whose places they occupy.

The exact formation in this oblique line depends totally on the companies having wheeled (only) one half of the angle which the new position makes with the old one, for should they at first wheel the whole of that angle, they would be then marching parallel to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas by having the other half of the wheel to complete when they come near to the new position, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and disengages the ground required by the succeeding one to form upon.

¶ 160.....*When the Regiment changes Position to the Rear on a fixed flank Company, by throwing backward the rest of the Regiment.*

The new position is given, and the flank company wheeled into it in the manner already directed, but backwards instead of forward. Fig. 59.
B.

RIGHT ABOUT
FACE.
COMPANIES FORWARD WHEEL
.....PACES.
TO THE

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

{ The rest of the regiment FACES to the right about, the companies then wheel forward the given number of paces towards the standing flank—or—as is already mentioned, they may if so ordered wheel BACKWARD into Echellon, and then FACE about.

<p>MARCH.</p> <p>..... <i>Shoulder forward.</i></p> <p><i>Halt, front.</i></p> <p><i>Dress back.</i></p>	{	<p>The companies MARCH with their rear ranks in front, and form in line in the same manner as when changing position forward ; except that the officer of each, having timeously given his word <i>Shoulder forward</i>, when his preceding one <i>Halts, fronts</i>, and then having disengaged himself from his division, will as soon as his leading flank man of his front rank touches his preceding formed flank, give his word <i>Halt, front,.....Dress back</i>, on which his company fronts, and without hurry dress back on him and the formed part of the line ; he correcting them upon the more distant given point.</p>
--	---	--

Very great activity is required from the officer in dressing up, or dressing back, otherwise the point of appui will not be ready for the next officer who arrives and is to perform the same operation, and this will particularly happen where the change of direction is inconsiderable. In the successive dressing of divisions in this manner officers are always to line them, so as not to obscure the distant point, but to leave it open and distinct, so that the direction of the line may run at the distance of one file from the given object of dressing.

§ 161.....*When the Regiment changes Position on a Central Company, by advancing one Wing and retiring the other.*

Fig. 61. 1. The central company is wheeled into the new position as already directed, and backwards or forwards according to the wing it belongs to.—Two points D. D. are quickly taken in the line, about

where the flanks of the regiment are to extend, and in the line of the central company.

.....WING,
RIGHT ABOUT FACE.
COMPANIES WHEEL
.....FACES INWARDS.

Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

{ The retiring wing **FACES** about
—both wings **WHEEL** their com-
panies inwards and forwards, half
as many paces as the central com-
pany wheeled.

MARCH.

{ The whole **MARCH** forward into
line with the central company, the
advancing wing dressing up, and
the retiring wing fronting and
dressing back, as already direct-
ed.

HALT.

WHEEL BACK
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

WHEEL INTO
ECHELLON.

Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

MARCH.

{ 2. *During the march of divisi-
ons to the front, into a new direc-
tion, if they should be obliged to
form in line in order to repulse a
sudden attack of cavalry; the whole
will HALT; the inwards or direct-
ing flank of each will stand fast,
and the outward one instantly
WHEELS back to its succeeding
one; when the enemy is repulsed,
the march is resumed by each
company WHEELING up its out-
ward flank to its former position,
and then proceeding in the move-
ment—during this operation, the
officers remain on their Echellon
flanks, from thence halt, dress
them when they wheel back into
line, fire them if necessary, and
from thence also wheel them again
into Echellon.*

HALT, FRONT.

{ 3. *During a march to the rear,
if this operation is necessary: The
whole HALT, FRONT; each com-*

WHEEL UP INTO
LINE.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE.

WHEEL
INTO ECHELLON.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

MARCH.

pany instantly WHEELS up its outward flank to the pivot preceding, and the line is thus formed, officers remaining on their Echelon flanks.—When the movement is to be resumed, the whole FACE to the rear, each company again WHEELS forward its outward flank the required number of paces as at first, and the MARCH is continued.

4. *If the change of position is a central one:* Then both the above operations may take place at the same time. The general situation, if the whole is at any period of the movement halted and formed will be: such central part as has arrived at the new line will be formed in it; but the flank parts which have not entered, and which join each of its extremities, will be formed in lines parallel to each other and to the position which they quitted.—When one flank only is required to form and halt, the other will continue to pursue its proper formation in the new line.

5. The squareness of each Echelon and individual, and the perfect equality of step during the movement are what alone can produce the decided exactness required in these operations.

§ 162.....*When the whole Regiment being moveable, changes Position to front or rear, on a distant point, which is in the Intersection of the old and new Line.*

Fig. 59. *If the change is made to the front;* every company is wheeled up to the leading hand, half the number of paces and no more, that would be required to place it parallel to the new position; the whole move on in their perpendicular direction till the flank of the leading company arrives in the new line; it

then immediately wheels up as many paces as it before wheeled, and halts, dressed in the new direction. The other companies march on, and as they successively arrive near the new line, they advance their outward shoulders, and halt, dress in it.

2. *If the change is made to the rear; the whole face about, and break into Echellon. Each again fronts and dresses back when it has arrived in the new line.*

This is the movement performed by each of the regiments of a considerable line, except one flank or one central one, in most changes of position made on a point within the line—For there can be but one regiment of a line which forms on a fixed division; all the others are evidently moveable forward or backward; each in proportion to its distance from the general centre, and from the point where its leading flank is to rest in the new line.

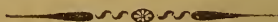
§ 163.....*When from line, the Companies of a regiment, march off in Echellon, successively and directly to the front, and again form in Line, either to the front, or to the flank.*

1. *As long as the intention is to form to that front; Fig. 62.* they may be retired at any named distance whatever behind each other, and when the leading division *Halts*, the others may move on, and dress in line with it.

2. *But when the intention is to form in line to the flank; Fig. 62.* the whole will be ordered to HALT, or the divisions successively to take any named distance and *Halt*—The directing flank of the leading company will be considered as the first point in the intended oblique line, and the particular direction meant to be given it, will be established by the placing of another point (*a*) beyond and before it.—A serjeant from each compa-
B. C.

ny will run out, and post himself as a pivot, lining on the first given points, and on each other, each also taking a distance from the one before him equal to the front of the division which precedes him.

The rear companies are then, by the oblique march to their directing hands, or by facing and filing should situation require it, marched to their respective serjeants, and then *Halt, Front*, square to their former front.—The line is formed by the WHEEL back of each company on those established flanks, or, when the companies are thus placed, the whole may be put in MARCH to the front, and preserving their relative situations HALT and WHEEL back into line, at some more advanced point.



ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUB-DIVISIONS OR SECTIONS.

In the Echellon movements by companies, in order to gain ground to a flank, and afterwards to make a parallel, or an advanced oblique formation. If the wheel up of each is considerable, it becomes the more difficult to preserve the true distances during the march, and thereby to resume the parallel line when so ordered, by the wheel back of companies. In many cases therefore such changes, if not limited to fixed points, may be made by the sub-divisions or sections wheeling up three paces only, so that each can afterwards move forward independant and justly, by remaining close behind each other; and this may be done either when the regiment is halted, or when it is in motion, without the intervention of advanced serjeants, or displacing of officers, but merely by the regular wheel up of the division with its outward man, who takes the three ordered paces.

§ 164....*If the Regiment is halted.*

1. The Caution is given that the sub-divisions or sections will wheel 3 paces to right or left.

Q. MARCH.	{	At the word MARCH, the outward
		man of each sub-division or section,
		whatever its strength may be, wheels
		up 3 paces, and each company officer
<i>Halt, Dress.</i>		gives the word <i>Halt, Dress</i> , to the stand-
		ing hand : in this situation the divisions
Fig. 8. A.		will stand parallel, or nearly so, and
		the front rank of each will be immedi-
		ately behind the line of the rear rank of
Fig. 66. A.		its preceding one : the 3 file of colours
		and centre serjeants wheel up as a sepa-
		rate division parallel to the others.

2. After the wheel of sub-divisions, the company officer will be on the pivot flank of its first one, and his serjeant on that of his second.—After the wheel of sections to the right, the company officer and his serjeant will be on the right of the two leading ones, and an officer or serjeant from the rear on the right of the others. After the wheel of sections to the left, the leading ones will have an officer or serjeant from the rear on their left, and the company officer and his serjeant will be on the left of the two last ones.

3. A sub-division of 9 files that wheels up in this manner 3 paces will stand at an angle of about 30 degrees with its former front, and if it is only formed 2 deep, and wheels up two paces, it will stand at an angle of 20 degrees. A section of 5 files that wheels up three paces, will stand at angle of about 35 degrees. According to the strength therefore of the division that thus wheels will be the degree of obliquaty taken from the former position.

MARCH.

Fig. 66.

At the general word MARCH, the whole move on in their then perpendicular direction, as specified in the Echellon movements, taking care that the step is equal, and that each keeps up to its preceding division, but by no means throws forward its advanced flank, which would necessarily derange the others; and should one division commit this fault, the succeeding one ought not to be influenced by it, but still maintain its equal step, and thereby avoid a shake or hurry in the rear, by which distances and direction would be lost.

HALT.

The whole HALT.

WHEEL BACK
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

Fig. 66.

4. *If the Regiment is to resume its former front B. C.* it instantly receives the Caution to wheel back into line. At the word MARCH, each division wheels back 3 paces, thereby joining the next standing pivot, and immediately receives the word *Halt, Dress*, from the leader of each company wherever he may be (always on the right, to which, if necessary, he will have shifted), to whom the whole of his company then turn their eyes, and are by him corrected on the standing pivot.

HALT.

5. After the HALT: *If the regiment is to form forward*, in the direction B. D. of its leading division, or that that division is previously wheeled up into a more advanced one. The company leaders will shift, if necessary, each to the flank of his leading divi-

FORM
REGIMENT
FORWARD.
MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

sion, if in sections. A CAUTION is given to form regiment, and at the word MARCH, the whole except the head division move on, and each pivot leader of the front rank, by a small and gradual turn forward of his inward shoulder, if necessary, conducts his division at an equal pace towards the point of each in the new line, and when within 5 or 6 paces of it, by the bringing forward the outward shoulders the division arrives in it on a parallel front, where each receives from the company leader (who is then on the moving flank of his company) a word *Halt, Dress*, and to which each successively conforms as he repeats it for them; in this manner the sub-divisions or sections will successively arrive in line, observing the circumstances of movement already prescribed. When the line is formed, company leaders, if necessary, shift to the right of their companies.

The whole of these movements depends on the accuracy of step, and the gradual and insensible turn of the shoulders of the pivot leaders, to which the divisions conform, and by which they are conducted on the march, and into the new line.

§ 165.....*If the Regiment is in March in Line.*

Fig. 66.

{ 1. The intention being to gain ground to the flank by the Echelon march of sub-divisions or sections, and without making a

SUB-DIVISION,
3 PACES, RIGHT,
WHEEL.

FORWARD.

WHEEL BACK
INTO LINE.

FORWARD.

HALT.

HALT.
FORM LINE
FORWARD.
HALT.

previous halt. On the word sub-divisions or sections 3 paces to the right or left wheel; the pivot men of the front rank of each division, turning in a small degree to the pivot hand, mark the time for three paces, during which the named divisions wheel in ordinary time on those men, and the 3 files of the colours and centre serjeants also wheel up as a division, parallel to the others. At the 4th pace, and at the word FORWARD, the whole move on direct to the front which each division has acquired, the position of leaders being as already described.

2. Where sufficient ground has been taken to the flank, on the word WHEEL BACK INTO LINE, the pivot men mark the time for 3 paces, turning back in a small degree to their original front, and the sub-divisions or sections instantly wheel backward into line, without altering the time, and at the 4th pace the whole step on, having received the word FORWARD, till the regiment is ordered to HALT.

1. When sufficient ground has been taken to a flank, and *that a forward formation of the line is to be made*, the head division halts in its then position, or is wheeled up 2 or 3 paces more and halted.—The rest of the regiment receives a CAUTION to form on the head

{ division, they continue their march,
 { and, conforming to the new direc-
 { tions given in § 164, by the gradu-
 { al alteration of their shoulders, ar-
 { rive successively in line.

When the regiment is in two ranks only, two paces will be substituted instead of three in all those movements, and no unnecessary time need be lost, or pauses made, betwixt the execution of these several words of command.

4. In these cases the original wheel up of divisions being limited to the 2 or 3 paces which disengages them from each other, the inclination of their flank movement, or of their change of front or position, alters with the strength of such division.—If therefore a small degree is to be taken, they may so wheel by companies, if a greater by sub-divisions, and if a greater still by sections, the close adherence of each to each ensuring (if well executed) the regularity of the regiment during the operation, which is made on the principles, though without all the formality, of the exact Echelon, and may be required and used in many situations of movement, and changes of position.

MARCH OF THE REGIMENT IN LINE.

The MARCH of the regiment in LINE, either to front or rear, being the most important and most difficult of all movements, every exertion of the commanding officer, and every attention of officers and men, become peculiarly necessary to attain this end. The great and indispensable requisites of this operation are, the direction of the march being perpendicular to the front of the regiment as then standing ; the perfect square-

General
 attentions.

ness of the shoulders and body of each individual ; the light touch of the files ; the accurate equality of cadence, and length of step, given by the advanced serjeants, whom the regiment, in every respect, covers, follows, and complies with. If these are not observed, its direction will be lost ; opening, closing, floating, will take place, and disorder will arise, in whatever line it makes a part of, at a time when the remedy is so difficult, and perfect order so essential.

Directing
serjeants.

It is evident therefore that every individual should be well prepared for this operation. But more particularly to ensure its correctness, two or more directing SERJEANTS must be trained to this peculiar object, on whose exactness of cadence, step, squareness of body, and precision of movement, dependance can be had. The habitual post of the two directing serjeants in the regiment is to be, in the centre of the regiment, and betwixt the colours, one of them in the front rank, and one in the rear, that they thereby may be ready to move out when the regiment is to march, one other also covers them in the supernumerary rank.

At all times when the regiment is formed in line, and halted, the instant attention of the front directing serjeant is (after being assured that he himself is perfectly and squarely placed in the rank) by casting his eyes down the centre of his body, from the junction of his two heels, and by repeated trials to take up and prolong a line perpendicular to himself and to the regiment ; for this purpose he is by no means to begin with looking out for a distant object, but if such by chance does present itself in the prolongation of the line extending from his own person, he may remark it : he is therefore rather to observe and take up any accidental small point on the ground, within 100 or 150 paces, intermediate ones cannot be wanting, nor the renewal of such as he afterwards successively approaches to in his march. In this

manner he is prepared, under the future correction of the commanding officer, to conduct the march.

¶ 166.....*When the Regiment halted, and correctly dressed, is to advance in Line.*

The commanding officer having previously placed himself 10 or 12 paces behind the exact line of the directing serjeant, will, if such file could be depended on, as standing truly perpendicular to the regiment, and great care must be taken to place it so, remark the line of its prolongation, and thereby ascertain the direction in which it should march; but as such precision cannot be relied on, he will, from his own eye, readiness, and having the square of the regiment before him, make such correction, and observe such object a little to the right or left, as may appear to him the true one; and in doing this he will not at once look out for a distant object, but will hit on it, by prolonging the line from the person of the directing serjeant to the front: or he will order the covering serjeant to run out 20 paces, and will place him in the line in which he thinks the regiment ought to advance. The directing serjeant then takes his direction along the line which passes from himself betwixt the heels of the advanced serjeant, and remarking his object, preserves such line in advancing.

THE
REGIMENT
WILL
ADVANCE.

{ The commanding officer will give the CAUTION, the regiment will advance, on which the front directing serjeant moves out 6 accurate and exact paces in ordinary time, and halts; the two other serjeants who were behind him, move up on each side of him, and an officer from the rear replaces in the front rank the leading serjeant. The centre serjeant in moving out marches and

halts on his own observed points, and the two other serjeants dress and square themselves exactly by him. If the commanding officer is satisfied that the centre serjeant has moved out in the true direction he will acquaint him so, if he thinks he has swerved to right or left he will direct him to bring up the shoulder on that side the smallest degree possible, in order thereby to change his direction, and take new points on the ground, towards the opposite hand.

The line of direction being thus ascertained, at the word MARCH, the whole regiment instantly step off, and without turning the head, eyes are glanced towards the colours in the front rank : the replacing officer betwixt the colours preserves, during the movement his exact distance of 6 paces from the advanced serjeant, and is the guide of the regiment.—

MARCH.

The centre advanced serjeant is answerable for the direction, and the equal cadence and length of step ; to these objects he alone attends, while the other two, scrupulously conforming to his position, maintain their parallelism to the front of the regiment, and thereby present an object to which it ought to move square : they are to allow no other considerations to distract their attention, and will notice and conform to the direction of the commander only, and if any small alteration in their position is ordered, it must be gradually and coolly made.

1. OFFICERS in the ranks can only be observant Officers. of their own personal exactness of march, they are then but individuals equally attentive as their men; they are not to attempt to dress their companies by looking along or calling to them, otherwise they will certainly err themselves, and derange the march: such care belongs to the officers in the rear; and well-trained soldiers themselves know the remedy that is required, and will gradually apply it.

2. The weight of the COLOURS, and the embar- Colours. rassment attending them in windy weather, rough ground, &c. make it impossible at any time to depend on the officer carrying them for a true direction, or an equal and cadenced step: but they must always be carried uniformly and upright, thereby to facilitate the moving and dressing of the line.

3. The MEN are on no account to turn their heads Soldiers. to the colours, but to preserve them, and consequently their shoulders square to the front, and to depend principally on the light touch of the elbow, together with an occasional glance of the eye, and the accuracy of step for their dressing—If heads were permitted to be turned to the centre, the inward shoulder would be brought forward, the wings would remain behind, the files would open, and disorder would arise in endeavouring still to adhere to the centre, and to counteract what would be occasioned by the fault of principle, and not of the soldier.

4. Inattention, or an inequality of STEP will pro- Step. duce a waving in the march of the regiment; but the communication of this may often be stoped, by the exertions of the major and adjutant, who seeing where and why it originates, will immediately apprize the companies in fault, and coolly caution the others that are well in their true line not to participate of the error.....A flank of the regiment may at first sight appear to be behind, when the fault really arises

from a central division bulging out, and thereby preventing the flank from being seen.

5. Whatever ALTERATION is to be made in any part of the regiment must be made gradually, and not hurried, that the consequent shake it occasions may be as little felt as possible ; the mounted officers only can point out, and correct such faults.

Flanks.

6. The FLANKS on no account are to be kept back ; much less are they to be advanced before the centre ; in either case the distance of files must be lost, and the regiment will not be covering its true ground : the convex or concave shape of the regiment will shew this to the commander, and the beginning of each inaccuracy is to be studiously corrected by necessary cautions. The officer who is on each flank of the regiment, being unconfined by the ranks, and not liable to be influenced by any floating that does arise, may, by preserving an accurate step, and having a general attention to the colours and to the proper line which the regiment should be in with respect to the advanced directors, very much assist in preserving the flanks in their due position : When he observes that a line drawn from himself through the centre of the regiment passes considerably before the other flank, he may conclude himself too much retired ; when such line passes behind that flank, he may conclude himself too much advanced, he will therefore regulate himself accordingly. When the regiment in march is convex, the wings must gain the straight line of the centre, by bringing up the outward shoulder ; and it must be strongly impressed on the soldier, that in all situations of movement, by advancing or keeping back the shoulder as ordered, the most defective dressing will be gradually and smoothly remedied, whereas sudden jerks and quick alterations break the line and produce disorder.

Rear
ranks.

7. The REAR RANKS which were closed up before the march begun, must move at the lock step,

and not be allowed to open during the march ; the correct movement of the regiment depends much on their close order.

8. Supported ARMS may be allowed when halted or when in column, as not interfering with its exactness ; but in the march in line, arms should always be carried SHOULDERED, as otherwise it is in vain to look for a just line, or true distances of files, and slovenliness, inaccuracy, and disorder, must take place at a time when the most perfect precision is required. Arms carried.

9. The COMMANDER must himself attend to the correct movement of the directing serjeant ; if during the first 20 paces he perceives steadiness, and no floating in the regiment, he may be assured that the line of march is justly taken ; but the contrary will be the case if (the parallel front of the regiment being preserved) he sees the files on one flank opening and on the other crowding ; he will instantly apply the remedy by ordering the directing serjeant—RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the left of the regiment, or, LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the right : At this command the serjeant making an almost imperceptible change of his position (by bringing up one shoulder) and of his points, and the colours in the regiment when they have advanced 6 paces to his ground conforming to it, the whole will by degrees gain a new direction.—Every change of direction made in this manner must produce a kind of wheel of the regiment on its centre) one wing gradually giving back, and the other as gradually advancing, an attention which the commander must take care is observed. Change of direction on the centre in march.

HALT. { The regiment marching in perfect order
when it arrives at its ground receives the
word HALT ; the step which is then taking
is finished, and the whole halt ; eyes remain
turned towards the centre, the whole

remain steadied, and the commanding officer places himself close to the rear rank, in order to see whether the regiment is sufficiently dressed, and in a direction perfectly parallel to the one it quitted. No preparatory caution is to be used before halting, such caution supposes and encourages incorrectness and creates uncertainty ; at the word halt, the whole halt firmly.

When the regiment is advancing in line for any considerable distance, or moving up in parade, the music may be allowed at intervals to play for a few seconds only, and the drums in two divisions to roll, but it is the wind instruments only which play, the large drum, or any other instrument whatever which marks time by the stroke, is not to be permitted.—
When the line is retiring, music should never play.

§ 167.....*When the Regiment is to Dress.*

It is evident that in the DRESSING of a single regiment after the halt, whatever correction is necessary, should be made by advancing or retiring the flanks, and not by moving the centre, which having been the guide in the march, has justly stopped at the point where it has arrived.

DRESS.	{	1. When the commanding officer gives the word DRESS, the company officer on the left of the colours instantly dresses the 6 or 8 files to the right of the colour in a proper parallel direction, the two wings immediately conform to the centre, and afterwards receives the word EYES,
EYES FRONT.	{	FRONT.

REGIMENT,
RIGHT, DRESS.
MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

2. Should the commander require a more exact dressing than the above gives, he will order one colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left, also the second company officer on the left of the colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left; then the flank company officers to advance, and to face to the centre; then each other company officer instantly to COVER those at their due distances, and face to the centre; then the officers of the left wing to FACE about, so as the whole stand fronted to the left.—Then regiment, RIGHT DRESS, on which the companies MARCH up to their respective officers, who are favorably posted for halting and dressing each his company; after which, and without loss of time, the officers front into line.

3. It must be observed in this mode of dressing, whether it is taken from the centre, or from a flank, that platoon officers, who originally face to the left, take distances equal to the front of their own platoons from the officer before them: but such as face to the right must take distances from the officer before them equal to the front of the platoon, which in line is on the right of them.—When circumstances allow the dressing to begin from the left, an advantage arises, that the officers do all originally face to the left.

4. A small change of direction may in this manner be given to the regiment when halted, either on a flank or central company.....To the *Front* by advancing and placing the officers.....To the *Rear* by the covering serjeants in the same manner giving the ground, the men facing about, lining with the serjeants;

Change of
direction
on the
flank
halted.

then fronting; and the officers replacing the serjeants. But a flank is never in such case supposed to move above 20 or 30 paces.

The regiment may also be occasionally dressed in the following correct manner.....One of the colours is advanced some paces.....An under officer on one flank of the regiment is placed in a determined line.....An under officer on the other flank lines himself with the last placed one, and the colour.....The two centre grand divisions are moved up the colour, and dressed to each flank.....The wing grand divisions then move up, and the grenadier and light company in the same manner. This dressing may soon be made if done at the ordinary pace, without hurry, and that the chiefs of divisions aligne in the prolongation of the base.

§ 168.....*When the Regiment is to retire.*

It is evident that it ought to be previously dressed with the same correctness, as when it was to advance, and the same care in ascertaining the direction of its march must be taken. Therefore before the retreat is to begin, an officer will have placed himself 30 paces in the rear, so as to stand perpendicular to the front directing serjeant, and of course he will be in the line, or nearly so, of the directing serjeants.

THE
REGIMENT
WILL RETIRE.

At the word, the REGIMENT WILL RETIRE, the directing serjeants face about. The same centre serjeant that directs to the front, directs also to the rear; he moves on in the line of the advanced officer, 6 paces beyond the rear rank and halts; and the other serjeants are on each side of him.

RIGHT ABOUT
FACE.

At the word **RIGHT ABOUT FACE**, the whole face ; and the supernumerary officer who replaces the directing serjeant, moves up into the leading rank ; a mounted field officer passes through to the rear, and the directing serjeant in the interim prolongs his line, and takes his objects betwixt the feet of the posted officer.

MARCH.

Immediately after facing about, the word **MARCH** is given and the whole proceed in the same manner, and with the same attentions as in moving to the front ; the directing serjeant conducting on his points, under the correction of the field officer who is 10 paces behind the regiment.

HALT, FRONT.

When the regiment is to front : it receives the word **HALT, FRONT**, and immediately halts and fronts, the serjeants, &c. resuming their proper stations ; it is then dressed if necessary in the manner already prescribed.

1. In marching to the **REAR**, the regiment must cover its proper extent of ground.—The rear rank men must avoid closing their files more than usual, otherwise the front men who are in general larger, will be crowded in their rank.—Music, drums, supernumerary officers, &c. will take care to march with exactness, not to interrupt, but rather to assist the regiment. The regiment is not to **FACE** about, till every thing is prepared for its instant **MARCH**, and its **HALT, FRONT** is one command : when retiring therefore it never unnecessarily stands faced to the rear.

Attentions in
retiring.

Wing
platoons.

2. When the WING companies of a regiment are wheeled backward and faced outward in order to cover its flank.....Such companies if during the retreat they march in file, will take particular care to move in the same direction as the regiment and not impede its progress. When the regiment fronts, those companies will face outward, and always recollecting that their immediate business is to cover the flanks, they will regulate their position and movements by those of the regiment.....When marching they move in file perpendicular to the line of the regiment: when fronted they make an angle with it of about 45 degrees, according to the apparent circumstances that threaten.

§ 169.....*Changes of the Regiment when in Movement.*

The regiment when marching in front, must be much accustomed to step out, to step short, to oblique to right or left, and to change direction by a small and gradual turn of the shoulder: all these must be executed with the utmost precision, in perfect cadence, and upon decided words of command, as they are operations wanted and essential to the perfect movements of a considerable line.

RIGHT OBLIQUE,
FORWARD.

1. Obliquing a regiment in a parallel direction to gain a flank, or to preserve a given appui, is a difficult, but necessary operation. Obliquing a regiment when in line with others for a few paces in order to correct an interval, must be done without eyes being turned from the centre.

LEFT SHOULDER
FORWARD.

RIGHT SHOULDER
FORWARD.

2. Change of direction on the march begins with the leading serjeant, and is conformed to by the centre and by the regiment, when they arrive at the point where the serjeant begun it; it must be made almost insensibly, and gradually in proportion to the extent of the body, that is thus to change direction, for without incurring disorder, the outward flank can only get into line by lengthening its step which requires time.

3. Obliquing the regiment by the wheeling up of sections or sub-divisions is performed as in § 164, and is used where a considerable space is to be gone over.

4. Change of front and position, by sub-divisions or sections, is performed as in § 165.

RIGHT, WHEEL.

FORWARD.
HALT.

5. If the regiment halted or in movement is required to make a wheel on a flank, with an uniform front, such wheel can seldom be wanted to exceed the 8th or 6th of the circle. On the word, to the right wheel, the right marks the time, the centre takes a half step, and the left a full step, the intermediate parts of the regiment conforming accordingly; and at the word forward, or halt, the whole are directed by the centre; this movement requires every aid that can be given by the mounted and supernumerary officers.

6. If the regiment in movement is required to make a small change of front on the centre. The centre

will mark the time, a very small turn of the shoulders will be gradually made, the wings will conform, one advancing, the other giving back, till at the word forward the whole move on as before.

Wheeling
up or
throwing
back the
whole or
part of the
regiment.

Fig. 65.

7. A regiment halted may change its position forward to a certain degree, or throw back a flank, in a manner that gives great protection during the movement if made near an enemy. At the word MARCH, the right company, or left, *wheels* into the new direction, and the rest of the line at the same time moves on in front, and by command OBLIQUES to join the left of the first company. When the right flank of the second company has arrived there, it also *wheels* up into the new direction, and the rest of the line continues to oblique to join its left flank. In this manner the line preserves its uniform front, obliques, and gradually enters the new position as its leading company arrives in it, at the same time that it covers and protects the flanks of the formed companies. By the same means also will a regiment throw back any number of its divisions in presence of an enemy:

Fig. 68.

The angular company will give the direction, the rest FACE ABOUT, MARCH, OBLIQUE, successively *wheel* into it, and *front*.... The outward company of all which may be formed as a flank to the regiment, will march in file, and cover the flank. Before this movement commences, officers must shift to the inward flank of their companies, in order to dress them on the given distant point after the wheel, in the same manner as in the Echellon movements, of the nature of which this partakes.

PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE WHEN THE REGIMENT IS MARCHING IN LINE.

When the regiment is marching either to front or rear, the partial obstacles that present themselves will be passed, by the formation, march, and deployment of the close column. Such parts as are not interrupted, still move on in front; such parts as are interrupted, double by divisions as ordered, behind an adjoining flank or flanks, and in this manner follow in close column in their natural order. As the ground opens they successively deploy, and again perfect the line. —The columns are always behind the line, and march closed.....The formed part of the regiment, whether advancing or retiring, continues to move on at the ordinary pace, and in proportion as the obstacles increase or diminish, will the formed or column parts of the line increase or diminish.

Passage of the obstacle in close column, either in advancing or retiring.

In general the columns formed will be of sub-divisions: the first sub-division that is obliged to double will be directed to which hand by the commander of the regiment, the others as they successively double will in consequence place themselves behind it, and behind each other, and the hand first doubled to, will be that which presents the opening most favorable to the subsequent march, and formation, and which the commanding officer will always hold in view, and order accordingly. The interrupted body will double to one or both flanks, according to circumstances, and the order it receives. Obstacles that impede a flank will occasion a single column to be formed from the flank towards the centre. Obstacles that impede the centre or central part of a wing, will if considerable occasion two columns to be formed, from the centre towards the flanks. The columns will follow a flank of such part of the line as is not impeded; and either in doubling into column, or

General attentions.

extending into line, the rear divisions will conform to the movements of their then leading one. No part less than the front of the column doubles or moves up, and when a battalion or more of a regiment is to be thrown into one column, it should be ordered by companies.

§ 170....*When the Obstacle presents a considerable Front parallel to the Line.*

CAUTION.

HALT, FACE.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front.

Q. March.

Ordinary.

The divisions impeded must all at once double behind such one or two other divisions as clear them of the obstacle. In this case a timely caution is given by the commanding officer to the part of the line that is to pass the obstacle; the necessary portion of the line when within a few paces of where it is impeded, is ordered to HALT, FACE, either to one or both flanks, and the heads of the sub-divisions (except the leading one) disengage to the rear. The whole MARCH quick, and each as it arrives square and close behind the preceeding one, *Halts, Fronts*, and *marches* forward, taking up the *ordinary* step when closed up. The leaders of the sub-divisions of the column remain on the flank next the opening which they are to fill up.

§ 171....*When a Point of the Obstacle is presented to the Line, and that it continues to increase.*

The doubling is then successsive, beginning with that division which is first interrupted, and continuing as

CAUTION.

HALT.

FACE.

Q. MARCH.

*Halt, Front.**Q. March.**Ordinary.*

it becomes necessary 'till the column can advance in clear ground.—In this case the sub-division impeded will be ordered by the commanding officer to HALT, FACE, MARCH..... *Halt, Front, March*, by its own leader, and follow the one adjoining to it, which makes the flank of that formed part of the line.—When this last sub-division also becomes impeded, these two perform the above operation, and place themselves in column behind the next sub-division. The three, the four, &c. successively repeat it as the narrowing of the ground requires (and upon the words given by the commanding officer, or by the officer of the then head division, should the commanding officer be otherwise employed) until the obstacle ceases to interrupt the march of a formed part of the line.

§ 172.....*When the Obstacles is passed, or diminishes, and that the Line encreases.*

HALT.

FACE.

Q. MARCH.

*Halt, Front.**Q. March.**Ordinary.*

If it is of such a nature as to permit of the complete extension at once into line: the whole column performs it by the commands and deployments of the close column on the front division which then makes part of the line.

But when the obstacle diminishes by degrees only; then the divisions of the column must come up into line

HALT.
 FACE.
 Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front.
Q. March.
Ordinary.

successively as the ground opens, and the remainder of the column must in diminishing shift towards the obstacle, in the same manner that it before shifted from it in encreasing. When the second sub-division of the column can therefore come up; its leader or the commanding or mounted officer gives the word for his own and the following sub-divisions HALT, FACE, MARCH, and when opposite to his ground HALT, FRONT, march, and when he is up in line ORDINARY.—It depends on the opening of the ground whether more than one division of the column can come into line at the same flank movement.—This operation is repeated by the mounted officer, or the leader of what is then the second sub-division, as often as such sub-division sees that it is proper to move up into line, and is conformed to by the rear of the column till all its divisions have successively arrived in the line.

The commanding officer himself or a mounted officer must as much as possible order the doubling of the divisions, and their moving up into line; and particularly when any considerable part of the regiment is obliged to double into one column. But if there are several doublings in the regiment at the same time, he can only direct the most considerable one, and the others must be ordered by their several head officers.

General attentions. These movements are all made on a parallel and perpendicular, not oblique lines, and the progress which the formed part of the regiment is constantly making, shews that no time must be lost either in giving or executing the words of command, and that the

divisions of the column must be well closed up, and its movements quick, firm, but in perfect order. The divisions of the column form successively into line, as the obstacle permits them, or again double so as to conform to the shape of the ground, which must always be filled up. The march of the uninterrupted part of the line must be steady and exact, and the openings made must be carefully preserved from the centre while it continues to direct, or from whatever point does so while the centre is impeded; the columns depend on the formed parts of the regiment to which they are attached, and are independent of each other. When the centre is interrupted, a named company officer of the line will be ordered to advance 6 paces to regulate the whole till the directing serjeant of the centre can again resume his true and original line, which he by advancing singly from the column will endeavour to do as soon as possible.

Whether the regiment is advancing or retiring the same operations takes place, and the columns in both cases are behind the formed part of the line: in retiring the rear rank leads.

§ 173.....*When the Regiment fires, during the Passage of an Obstacle.*

HALT.

{ If the regiment in *advancing* should be obliged to fire; it HALTS in the situation it is then in, execute such firings as are ordered, and again advances.

HALT, FRONT.

{ If the regiment in retiring is pressed by the enemy, the part in line will HALT, FRONT, the part in column will move on till the last division arrives in line. and will then

RIGHT
ABOUT FACE.
MARCH.

HALT, FRONT. The firing that is ordered will be executed ; and when it is again proper to retire, the whole will FACE about, the part in line will MARCH, and the columns will also be put in MARCH when the line arrives at their head.

§ 174.....*When a Regiment is advancing, it may also under certain Circumstances pass such Obstacles as present themselves by File.*

In such case the interrupted division or divisions will be ordered to FACE either to one or both flanks, and closely to follow in file such parts of the regiment as are not broken: the filing will encrease as the obstacle encreases, but as it diminishes, file after file will successively and quickly move up to their proper place till the whole are again formed; and during this operation, the leading file will always remain attached to the flank of the part in line.—The same rules that direct the doubling in column, direct the doubling by files; when a sub-division files it will be from the flank only; when a company files it may be from both flanks; and if a larger front than 2 companies is interrupted, it then doubles into column.—Where the obstacles are of small extent, but frequently occurring, this mode is the readiest that can be applied in advancing: but in retiring it cannot be used, if the enemy are at hand to press upon the regiment; and therefore the passing by column should be looked upon as the general method.

§ 175.....*When the Regiment moving in line, passes a Wood, or other impediment, to front or rear, by the filing of Companies.*

PASS TO
THE FRONT.

Right, turn.

Fig. 63. A.

1. *If to pass a wood or other embarrassed ground to the front ;* when it is found necessary to break the regiment, the commander will order it to PASS from the right of the companies to the front, on which each company officer orders his company *right turn*, wheels out his leading file, and passes on as fast as the difficulty of the ground will allow him, endeavouring to preserve a relative distance from the left as being the head of the column, or from the other flank if particularly so ordered.—Each officer on arriving at the farther edge of the wood will *halt* his company, and remain till the others are come up, and till the whole are ordered to march out, and form in regiment ; which will generally be done by standing in open column the left in front, dressing pivot flanks, and wheeling up into line.—Or, if the companies form separately on the edge of the wood, they will march out and join in the regiment.

PASS
COMPANIES
BY FILES
Left, turn.
Q. March.

2. *If to pass to the rear.....* When the regiment retiring in line, arrives at the point where it must break, it is ordered to PASS, COMPANIES BY FILES.....The leader of each gives his word *left turn*, and proceeds as above directed ; the heads of files

HALT, FRONT.

Fig. 67.

PASS.
COMPANIES
BY FILES.
Right, Face.
Q. March

HALT, FRONT.

PASS
COMPANIES
BY FILES.
Left turn.
Q. March, &c.

are regulated from the left; and after quitting the wood, at an ordered distance, they HALT FRONT into column, the right in front, and WHEEL to the left, up into line. The line then again retreats if necessary.

3. *If a regiment in first line passes through a second which advances and relieves it....* The second marches up to within 12 paces of the first and halts.... The regiment of the first then receives the word PASS COMPANIES BY FILES..... Each leader gives his word *Right Face, Q. March*, and proceeds at a quick pace to the rear through the second line, which, whenever the head of a division presents itself, throws back as many files as are necessary to give it passage, and again immediately moves up; the retiring files who are regulated by their left, at any ordered distance HALT FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL up to the left into line.

4. *When the second line does not advance to relieve the first....* The regiment of the first line retires, and when it comes within 12 paces of the second, it then receives the word to PASS COMPANIES BY FILES; each leader orders to the *left turn*, and proceeds as before directed; the column when halted and fronted, having its right in front.

Circumstances may require, that the companies should PASS from their proper left instead of the right,

in which case the leaders will shift and conduct such left, until the line is formed, when they will again resume their proper places.

5. *If a regiment in second line passes by files to the front, through a first line.....*It will advance within 12 paces of the first one.....On the command to PASS to the front by files; each company leader will give his word *right turn*, and move on at the head of his file in ordinary time, through the first line, which makes openings for it. When the rear of the files has passed; the regiment will be ordered HALT FRONT in column the left in front—WHEEL into line—and may then advance.

There may be occasions, where instead of halting in colum, and wheeling into line.....The regiment may be ordered to form by the rear files moving up to their front leaders; but the line thereby obtained will generally be a very inaccurate one, and not fit to advance without a halt, and a previous dressing.

6. *If a regiment in second line advances and passes in front, through a first line which it is to relieve.....*The first line will at the necessary instant wheel back by companies into open column, the advancing regiment will pass through it, such files as are interrupted following to the right, moving up as soon as they can, and the regiment thus reformed moving on to its object.....or.....if a regiment advancing in front meets with a line retiring, this last will throw itself into open column, and halt, till the advancing regiment has passed.....or.....if a line is retiring in files, it will in same manner halt square when it meets the advancing line, allow it pass and then proceed.

§ 176.....*When the Regiment retires by alternate companies in two Lines.*

RIGHT COMPANIES.
HALT, FRONT.

LEFT COMPANIES,
HALT, FRONT.

RIGHT COM- { ABOUT FACE.
PANIES. MARCH.
HALT, FRONT.

LEFT COM- { ABOUT FACE.
PANIES. MARCH.
HALT, FRONT.

The right companies stand fast, or, halt front if the regiment is already in motion. The left retire in line a given number of paces and halt, front; on which the right companies retire in the same manner beyond the left, and halt, front. In this way they proceed till the regiment is ordered to form.

One colour remains on the flank of its proper company in each line and directs its movement, for which purpose a serjeant will advance 6 paces before it, during the march. Distances are preserved from that colour. The eyes of each line remain turned to their colour, and officers are on the inward flanks of their companies....The Light Infantry covers the retreat.

§ 177.....*When the Regiment advances, or retires by Battalions, and fires.*

LEFT WING { HALT.
MARCH.

RIGHT WING { HALT.
READY.
PRESENT
FIRE.
MARCH.

LEFT WING. { HALT.
READY.
&c.

1. If the regiment is in march and advancing....The left wing HALTS when ordered, and the right one continues to move on 15 paces, at which instant the word MARCH being given to the left wing, the right at the same time is ordered to HALT, to fire and load, and the left marches past them, till the right wing being loaded and shouldered receives the word MARCH, the other wing Halts, Fires, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.

RIGHT WING, HALT FRONT.

LEFT WING, HALT FRONT.

RIGHT WING	{	READY.
		PRESENT.
		FIRE.
		ABOUT FACE.
		MARCH.

LEFT WING, HALT, FRONT.

LEFT WING.	{	READY.
		PRESENT.
		FIRE, &C.

2. If the regiment is in march, and retiring.—The right wing is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and when the left one has gained 15 paces, and receives the word Halt, Front, the right wing is instantly ordered to Fire, to Load, to Face About, and March 15 paces beyond the Left, where it receives Halt, Front, on which the left wing gets that of Fire, and in the same manner alternately proceeds, every due dispatch being made in reloading.

There should be a commander for each battalion.

One colour remains on the inward flank of each battalion, to which the men continue to look, by which they move and before which a directing sergeant should advance six paces.

The make ready, present, fire of the advanced wing is instantly to succeed the march of the other advancing wing, or, the halt front of the retiring wing.

In the battalion firing, advancing and retreating.If formed two deep, both ranks will fire standing. If formed three deep, the front and centre rank should fire standing, and the rear rank remain shouldered in reserve.

§ 178... *When the Regiment forms a Square, or Oblong.*

CAUTION.

FORM SQUARE.

{	1. The 4th, 5th, 6th regiment companies stand fast (in consequence of the explanatory caution that is given preparatory to forming the square), the rest of the regiment

COMPANIES
INWARDS
FACE.
Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front.

Fig. 70. A.

Fig. 70. B.

CAUTION.
FORM SQUARE.
COMPANIES
BACKWARD
WHEEL.

Fig. 69. A.

Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

RIGHT ABOUT

MARCH.
Halt, Front.

faces inwards, and disengages the heads of companies to the rear; the colours and their coverers fall back, the 4th company closing to the left to fill up their place. They march quick. The 7th, 8th, and light companies place themselves in open column behind the 6th, the grenadiers place themselves between the light company and the 1st. When these three last companies close up to the 8th and 2d, and face about (having each first countermarched, if it is thought necessary to have the front rank outermost) at the same time that the 7th, 8th, and the 3d, 2d, wheel outwards, the oblong stands complete, or, the square may be a perfect one, if it is composed of the eight regiment companies only; the grenadier and light company being in reserve in the rear, ready to be applied according to circumstances.

2. *The square or oblong may be formed by the 3d, 4th, 5th, companies standing fast.....* The rest of the regiment wheels backward, each company the 8th of the circle, on its inward flank. They face about. They march to complete the square as above; each wheeling when it comes to its ground, and then fronting; and in this manner will the proper front rank of the rear face be outward. The commanding officer, colours, and their coverers, drums, &c. are within the square, as also the regiment guns, which

Dress.

Fig. 69.

are shifted to wherever they are most necessary. The square is composed of the front, the right, the left, the rear faces: the front face is that on which the square originally forms.

THE SQUARE
WILL MARCH,
TO FRONT, REAR,
RIGHT, OR LEFT.

MARCH.

Fig. 71. A.

HALT.
FRONT, SQUARE.

3. *When the square or oblong is to march by any one face.....* The side which is to lead is announced; the colours move up behind its centre; the opposite side faces about; and the two flank sides wheel up by subdivisions, so as to stand each in open column. The square marches, two sides in line, and by their centre; and two sides in open column, which cover, and dress to their inward flanks on which they wheeled up, carefully preserving their distances. The square halts, and when ordered to front square, the sub-divisions in column immediately wheel back, and form their sides, and the sides, which faced about again faces outwards.

THE SQUARE
WILL MARCH,
BY THE RIGHT
FRONT ANGLE.

Fig. 71. B.

4. *When the perfect square is to march by one of its angles in the direction of its diagonal.* A CAUTION is given by which angle, and the two sides that form it stand fast, while the other two sides face about.—The whole then by sub-divisions wheel up one eighth of the circle, 2 sides to the right, and 2 sides to the left, and are thus parallel to each other, and perpendicular to the direction in which they are to move, the

MARCH.

HALT.

FRONT, SQUARE.

pivot flanks being in this manner placed on the sides of the square. Each side being thus in Echellon, and the colours behind the leading angle, the whole are put in march, carefully preserving the distances they wheeled at, and from the flanks to which they wheeled.—After the HALT, and at the word FRONT SQUARE, the whole wheel back into square, and the two sides that require it face about outward. When the oblong marches by one of its angles, its sub-divisions perform the same operation of wheeling up, each the eighth of the circle ; but its direction of march will not be in the diagonal of the oblong, but in that of a square, viz. of the line which equally bisects the right angle.

The angular march of the square or oblong may be made in any other direction to the right or left of the above one ; but in such case the sub-divisions of two opposite sides will have to wheel up more than the eighth of the circle, and those of the other two sides proportionally less, in order to stand as before perpendicular to the new direction, the sum of these two wheels will always amount to that of a quarter circle, and their difference will vary as the new line departs more or less from the equal bisecting line ; this will be known by first wheeling up the two angular divisions till they stand perpendicular to the new direction, and then ordering all the others to conform accordingly.—This movement is very difficult in the execution, and cannot be made with any degree of accuracy, unless the perpendicular situation of the divisions is correctly attained, and carefully preserved.

5. *The square halted changes direction on any one of its files;* by that file wheeling up on one of its flank divisions, which is previously placed; its two flank sides at the same time make a similar gradual change to comply with the alteration; and the rear side marches in file to complete the square.

6. *When the square in march halts and fronts, to repulse an expected attack, of cavalry.*—The front rank kneels, and present their bayonets sloped; the two rear ranks fire standing; either companies by ranks successively, or companies (independant of each other) by sub-divisions, one firing when the other has loaded; or companies by files as ordered; the front rank remaining as a reserve.—Should the regiment be formed only two deep, the front rank should remain kneeling, and the rear rank should fire by files.

7. *The front and rear faces of the square or oblong in march are increased,* by repeatedly adding to their flanks 4 divisions from the column sides which are thereby shortened, and oblique outwards to cover; they are decreased by the 4 outward divisions of the front and rear repeatedly becoming part of the flank sides, which are thereby lengthened, and oblique inwards to cover.—Thus, either advancing or retiring, the whole may diminish to two sub-divisions in front, or, if necessary, to a double file marched off from the centre of the leading face.

8. *When the square or oblong forms in line on one of its sides,* or on any named company which is placed in a given direction.....Each other company will be WHEELED up more or less, till it stands with its inward flank perpendicular to its point in the new line, to which the whole will MARCH and enter successively, the outward companies taking care not to impede the inner ones, which must form before them. According to the part of the regiment formed on, will this operation be more or less complex.—Or, this may be

done by the facing and filing of each division from its inward flank, to its point in the new line where it will form up.

9. *If, from open column of march, it is necessary to make front in oblong 3 deep to both flanks.*—The leading division *Halts*, the other divisions of the column will take half distance and *Halt*: the half divisions will *WHEEL* outwards, *Halt*, and form an oblong, closed in the rear by the last division. When column of march is to be resumed, the half divisions will *WHEEL* backwards into column, and the regiment will proceed.—If there are several regiments in the column, each will form as above, closed by its own front and rear divisions; and the distances betwixt regiments will also be closed.

10. *If a regiment is marching in open ground, where it is necessary to be prepared against the attack of cavalry.*—It may move in column of companies at quarter distance, one named company in the centre being ordered to keep an additional distance of 2 files; in this shape the regiment is easily managed, or directed up-

Fig. 73. A. on any point.—When the column *HALTS*, and is ordered to *FORM THE SQUARE*, the first company falls back to the second; the last company closes up to the one before it: The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their centre, by their sub-divisions taking each one pace to the flanks; 2 officers with their serjeants place themselves in each of the front and rear intervals; 2 officers with their serjeants also take post in rear of each flank of the company from which the additional interval has been kept; and a serjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the first division, and of each flank rear rank man of the last division; all other officers, serjeants, the 4 displaced men, &c. &c. assemble in the centre of the companies which are to form the flank faces. Those last named companies having been told off each in 4 sections, *WHEEL* up by sections, 2 to the right, and 2 to the left; (the

2 rear companies at the same time closing up, and facing outwards) the inner sections then **CLOSE** forward to their front ones, which dress up with the extremities of the front and rear companies, and 4 files on each flank of the second companies, from the front and from the rear, **FACE** outwards.—The whole thus stand faced outwards and formed 6 deep, with 2 officers and their serjeants in the middle of each face to command it; all the other officers as well as serjeants, &c. are in the void space in the centre, and the files of the officers in the faces may be completed from serjeants, &c. in the interior, in such manner as the commandant may direct.—The mounted field officers must pass into the centre of the column, by the rear face, if necessary, opening from its centre 2 paces, and again closing in.

Fig. 73. B

When ordered, the 2 first ranks all round the column will kneel and slope their bayonets, the two next ranks will fire standing, and all the others will remain in reserve; the file coverers behind each officer of the sides will give back, and enable him to stand in the 3d rank. *When the march is to be resumed*, the sections that closed up fall back to their distance; the sections then **WHEEL** back into column; the officers, serjeants, &c. take their places on the flanks; and when the column is again put in motion, the companies that closed successively take their proper distance.

Unless the companies are above 16 file they cannot be divided into 4 sections: If therefore they are under 16 file, and told off in 3 sections, the column will march at the distance of a section; and in forming the square, the 2 outward sections will wheel up, but the 3d one will stand fast, and afterwards, by dividing itself to right and left, will form a 4th rank to the others; in resuming column the outward sections wheel back, and the rear of the centre sections easily recover their places: as to all other circumstances they remain the same.

INSPECTION OR REVIEW

OF A

REGIMENT OF INFANTRY.

THE Regiment should march to its ground in open column of companies or sub-divisions, and march into the alignement by companies ;....form in close order ;....take open order as laid down for the formation of the regiment.

In this disposition and the whole dressed to the right, the general may be awaited....He should be received with such compliments as are due to his rank, agreeably to military honors. The colonel and lieutenant-colonel on this occasion should be on foot at the head of the colours ; at all other times they are mounted.

A camp colour should be originally placed 80 or 100 paces in front of the centre of the regiment, where the general is supposed to take his station ; but although he may chuse to quit that position, still the colour should be considered as the point to work upon, and to which all movements and formations are relative.

Receiving the General.

PRESENT ARMS. { When the reviewing general presents himself before the centre, and is 50 or 60 paces distant, he will be received with a general salute. The men present arms, and the officers salute, so as to drop their swords with the last motion of presented arms: the music will play, and all the drums will beat....The colours salute only such persons as from their rank, are entitled agreeably to military honors.

SHOULDER ARMS. { The men shoulder, and the officers recede cover their swords with the last motion.

The general then goes towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly steady without paying any farther compliment while he passes along the front of the regiment, and without facing when he goes along the flank and rear. While the general is going round the regiment, the music plays, and the drums beat; they cease as soon as the general has returned to the right flank of the regiment.

REAR RANKS TAKE CLOSE ORDER. MARCH. { While the general is proceeding to place himself in the front, this command will be given, and the colonel and lieutenant-colonel will then mount in the rear of the centre.

Marching past in Ordinary Time.

COMPANIES ON YOUR LEFT BACKWARD, WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.* MARCH. { The regiment will break into column of companies the right in front....The column is put in motion, pioneers and music having been previously ordered to the head of it. Points will be ascertained by the adjutant for the exact and several wheelings of the divisions, so that their right flanks in marching

{ past shall be only four paces distant from the camp colour, where it is supposed the general places himself to receive the salute.

Halt left wheel. { The several companies wheel
Halt Dress. { successively at the first angle of the
March. { ground.

Halt, left wheel. { The companies successively make
Halt, Dress. { this wheel at the second angle of
March. { the ground, and which brings them
Eyes Right. { on the line on which they pass the
general. Each leader of a company, when it has advanced 6 paces from the wheeling point, changes quickly by the rear to the right flank of his company, and as soon as he has placed himself on that flank, he will order eyes to be turned to the right.

Rear Ranks { The leading company, and each
take { other successively, as it arrives
Open Order. { within 50 paces of the general,
opens its ranks, at which time the officers move into the front of the company, and the leading one is replaced on the right flank by his serjeant.

In *marching past* the reviewing general, the colonel should be at the head of the grenadier company, with the major a little behind him on his left. The music are in two ranks 6 paces before the colonel: The pioneers are in two ranks 6 paces before the music, having a corporal at their head to lead them: The drummers and fifers are on the left flank of their respective companies.

The lieutenant-colonel is to be in the rear; but in the absence of the colonel, the lieutenant colonel will

of course supply his place. The adjutant is in the rear, behind, and on the left of the lieutenant-colonel.

The colours are 3 paces behind the 4th regiment company, covered by their serjeants. Staff officers do not march past.

In marching past at open ranks, the serjeant who is on the right flank of the company is responsible for the proper wheeling distance being kept from the front rank of the company preceding him. The leading officer must invariably preserve his distance of 3 paces before the right of the company, and not derange its march, the rank of officers dress to him, eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground in order to cover the front of the company: If there is only one officer with the company, he is towards the right of it. Supernumerary serjeants are three paces in the rear of their several divisions.

The music begin to play just after the leading company has made the second wheel, they continue to march on, and do not draw up opposite the general. They as well as the pioneers regulate their march by the head of the column.

The officers, when they arrive at a proper distance from the general, must prepare to salute successively by companies, when within 6 paces of him, and recover their swords when 10 paces past him, without in the least altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of companies. The commanding officer, when he has saluted at the head of the regiment, places himself near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched past. The drummers give a roll, each when the officers of his own company salute.

<p><i>Rear Ranks,</i> <i>take</i> <i>Close Order.</i></p>	{	<p>The officers commanding companies will each successively, when he has passed the general by 30 paces, close his rear ranks, and at</p>
---	---	---

INSPECTION

this time each individual of the company resumes the post which he held when the column was first put in motion.

*Halt, Left,
Wheel.
Halt Dress.
March.*

The several companies wheel successively when opposite the ground where the left of the regiment stood, their leading officers having shifted to their left flank when the ranks closed.

HALT.
SUPPORT ARMS.

When the leading company is near to where the left of the regiment stood, the whole halt, music ceases, arms may be supported, and the quick march may instantly commence.

Marching past in Quick Time.

QUICK MARCH. { The whole march off in quick time.....No music.

*Halt, Left,
Wheel.
Halt, Dress.
Quick March.*

The column makes three several wheels, viz. at the point where the left of the regiment first stood : at the point where the first wheel was made : and at the point where the second wheel was made, which places it on the line of passing the general.

CARRY ARMS.

Before the leading company has made the last wheel arms are carried. When it has completed that wheel the music begin to play.

In *marching past* the general in quick time, and at close order, officers do not salute or pay any compli-

ment, but are attentive to preserve the proper intervals betwixt their companies. The leading officer of each company shifts to its right by its rear in the same manner as in the ordinary march, 6 paces after the last wheel, which brings him on the line with the general, and when he has passed the general 30 paces he will resume his proper pivot flank. The supernumerary officers and serjeants march in a rank, in rear of the companies, at one pace from the rear rank, and officers swords should be carried against the right shoulder, and steady.

The colonel, lieutenant-colonel, major, and adjutant, are in the same places as in marching past in ordinary time ; as also drummers, pioncers, and music ; which last will commence playing just after they have wheeled into the line of passing, and will continue to march on at the head of the column.

<i>Eyes, Left.</i>	{	The several companies 30 paces after passing will successively dress to the left the proper pivot flank, and the officers will shift to that flank.
--------------------	---	---

<i>Halt, Left, Wheel. Halt, Dress. March.</i>	{	The companies successively wheel, when opposite to the ground where the left of the regiment stood.
---	---	---

HALT.	{	When the head of the column approaches to the left of the ground on which it originally received the general, the music will cease, and the column will be halted in order to take up the ordinary march, for the purpose of moving on an alignment.
MARCH.	{	

Halt, Left, Wheel.....Halt, Dress.....March.....
When at the point on the left of the alignment.

Forming in Line.

HALT.	{	The column prolongs the alignment, till arrived at the point where its head or right is to be placed..... It receives the word halt ; pivots are instantly corrected, if necessary ; it wheels up into line, and the pioneers and music go to their posts behind the centre.
LEFT WHEEL, INTO LINE.		
MARCH.		
<i>Halt, Dress.</i>		
WITH CARTRIDGE; PRIME, AND LOAD.	{	The regiment being now formed at close order, the commanding officer will order it to prime and load with cartridge, and will proceed with <i>Movements</i> and <i>Manœuvres</i> .

But, should the performance of the manual and platoon exercise be required, the commanding officer, after the line has formed, gives a CAUTION that the manual and platoon exercise will be performed, and goes to the rear of the regiment. The major advances to the front of the regiment, opens ranks ; unfixes bayonets ; shoulders arms ; makes the officers and colours take their post of exercise in the rear, by facing to the right ; marching through the several intervals occupied by the serjeants ; and, when three paces beyond the rear rank, they halt, and then receive the word FRONT : The commanding officer, lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, pioneers, music, supernumerary serjeants, drummers, fifers, are at their posts in the rear, as when the regiment is formed at close order.

The major proceeds with the *Manual*, observing that the front rank only comes down to the last position of the charge bayonets, the others remain ported. The serjeants who preserve in the front rank the places of the platoon officers, remain there steady during the whole of the manual.

The major closes rear ranks for the *platoon exercise*, and platoon officers, and serjeants, and colours, and every other individual, take their places as when the regiment is at close order.

The major proceeds with the platoon exercise, and the several ranks make ready each according to its situation of front, centre, and rear; after firing, they load and shoulder.

The manual and platoon exercise being finished, the major goes to his post, and the commanding officer of the regiment proceeds to prime and load with cartridge, and then to commence the following

Movements.

Plate 16.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. <i>On a rear Division.</i> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Form Close column of
Companies behind
Grenadiers
Form close column of
two companies
Face and march to the
right
Deploy on the rear di-
vision. </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> sec.
137

147
150
149 </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <p>The column marches quick 20 or 30 paces to the right, and without halting begins to deploy into line on the rear division.—The commanding officer of the regiment gives the word for each division to halt, front.</p> |
| 2. <i>On a front Division.</i> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Form close column of
companies in front of
the left
Form close column of
two companies
Face and march to the
left
Deploy on the front di-
vision. </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> 137

147
150
148 </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <p>The column marches quick 30 or 40 paces to the left, and without halting begins to deploy on the front division.—The commanding officer of the regiment gives the word for each division to halt, front.</p> |
| 3. <i>On a central Division.</i> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Form close column of
companies, on a central
company, either flank
in front, and facing to
the rear
Countermarch of each
division in close co-
lumn
Deploy on any central
named company. </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> 138

143
146 </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <p>The close column is formed facing to the rear. It then countermarches each division so as to return to the proper front.—In the central deployment by companies, the company officers give the words to halt, front.</p> |

4. *Change of position in open column.*
- | | | |
|---|----------|--|
| Wheel back into open column of companies, the right in front | sec. 108 | The regiment thus, at an intermediate point, enters an alignment on which it is to form. |
| March forward 30 or 40 paces | 111 | |
| Enter an oblique line (the 3 or 4 leading companies) by wheeling successively to the left, a half wheel | 126 | |
| Halt | | |
| The rear companies file into column | 126 | |
| Wheel up into line. | 118 | |
5. *Wing thrown back.*
- | | | |
|--|-----|--|
| The left company is wheeled back, till parallel to the original position.—The rest of the companies wheel into echelon.—March to the rear.—Form on the left company. | 160 | The whole companies wheel back at the same time; the left company twice the number of paces that the others do. Should it be necessary for the subsequent movements, the line may retire 50 or 60 paces, and then front. |
|--|-----|--|
6. *Countermarch and change of position.*
- | | | |
|--|-----|---|
| Wheel back into open column, the right in front | 108 | After the countermarch by files, the column stands with its left in front.—The column closes in quick time.—The square is formed, and close column reformed as in part 4th, § 189.—The column opens out in quick time from its rear division, and halts.—The countermarch by companies from the rear to the front is in ordinary time. When the line is formed, it is then considerably to the general's right, and with its rear to him. |
| Countermarch companies by files | 100 | |
| March in column 30 or 40 paces.—Head division halts close to the head of column | 138 | |
| Form square, and prepare for firing | 189 | |
| Reform in close column | | |
| Open out to open column from the rear, and halt | 153 | |
| Change head of column by the countermarch of companies, from the rear to the front | 101 | |
| Column moves on and halts | | |
| Wheel up into line. | | |

7. Countermarch by files } sec. { This brings back the
on the centre of the } 98 { regiment to its original
regiment }

8. *March in open column.* { Form open column be- } 121 { The companies that are
hind the left company, }
which is put in march }
when the 3d company }
has taken its place in }
column }
The right sub-divisions } 87 { The companies that are
double }
The right sub-divisions } 88 { filing incline towards the
move up }
The column halts, and }
pivots are corrected }
Wheel up into line. }

When the column is marching steadily, the whole sub-divisions double at once by one command, and again move up at another.

9. *Echelon change of position.* { Wheel back into open } 109 {
column, the left in }
front }
The third company is } 158 { The line is thus formed
wheeled back, the 8th }
of the circle, and each }
of the others 3-16ths }
of the circle }
Form line on the third } 159 {
company, by the ech- }
ellon march }

10. *Echelon change of position.* { The left company is } 159 { The line thus changes
wheeled up the 8th of }
the circle, and each of }
the others one 16th— }
Form line by the ech- }
ellon march. }

- | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| 11
<i>Change of position.</i> | { The regiment faces to the right.—Marches in file 50 or 60 paces }
{ Forms column of companies on the march }
{ Halts.—Wheels up into line, except the light company, which files quickly to the right, and forms behind the colours. } | sec.
94

95 | { The column of companies is formed by the rear men of each moving up quick to the left of their leaders, and of each other: the officers move to pivot flanks, and pivots are instantly corrected.—The column halts when the colours are opposite to the general. } |
| | 12
<i>Retreat in Line.</i> | { The regiment retires 50 paces—Halts, fronts }
{ —Fires twice by companies from centre to flanks }
{ Retreat by alternate companies in two lines, 250 paces, each retreat about 50 paces. }
{ Form line }
{ Retreat in line 50 paces, }
{ Halt, front. } | 168

176 |
| 13
<i>March to a flank in Echelon.</i> | | { Companies make a half wheel to the right }
{ March in echelon 250 paces }
{ Wheel back on the march into parallel line }
{ Forward 100 paces— }
{ Halt }
{ Fire thrice by companies from flanks to centre. } | 154

155

156 |

If the Regiment has hitherto been formed two deep, it should now form three deep if its companies will average ten files each.

- 14 { *Movements in the square.* { sec. { The square is formed by the echellon march of companies.
- Form square
- March the square by the left angle of the front face 50 paces
- Halt—Form square
- March square by the left face—Halt—Form square
- 178 {
- March square by the rear face 60 paces—Halt—Form square
- Fire in square by companies
- Form the line.
- After the march by the left face, the square is formed when it is opposite to the general.
- The firings in square are as expressed in § 178.
- The line is formed by the echellon wheel up, and march of companies.
- When the order is given to form line, the light company marches quickly, and places itself two deep and in two divisions 10, or 12 paces behind the two centre companies.

- 15 { *Retiring and filing to the rear.* {
- Retire in line 100 paces. } 168
- File by companies from the proper right
- Halt in open column the right in front
- 175 {
- Wheel up into line.
- When the line has passed the light company 20 paces, that company extends to cover the centre of the regiment, and follows at 50 or 60 paces distance; and when the column halts to form, the light company passes quickly through and beyond it.
- The companies file quick to the rear.
- The regiment forms lines at the extremity of its ground; the light company 30 paces in its rear.

16

Filing—Advancing, and changing to the front.

Avance in line 50 paces

File from the right of companies to the front 50 paces—Halt in open column the left in front—Wheel up into line

Advance in line 50 paces

Advance by alternate battalions, and fire four times.

sec.

166

178

177

Before the line advances, the light company quickly forms extended 30 paces before the centre, and preserves that distance in advancing.

When the column halts to form, the light company passes quick to the rear, and assembles, half of it behind each flank, and moves relatively with the flank companies till after the charge of bayonets.

The alternate battalions fire the 2 first ranks standing.

Form line—Advance 50 paces—Fire volley.

Advance 20 paces—Fire volley—Charge bayonets 50 paces,—Halt—Load.

After the volley, bayonets are ported, the regiment advances firm by the centre at the quick step, and at the word Halt, the front rank comes down to the charging position — The word Prime and Load is then given and the light company issuing from behind the flanks, pursue, return, and assemble and join on the left of the regiment.

18

Retiring in line.

Retire in line 100 paces

Retire by alternate battalions—Fire four times.

Retire in line, 100 paces or more—Halt, front.

177

The whole regiment being assembled.

The alternate battalions, fire the two front ranks standing.

19 <i>Advancing in line.</i>	Advance in line 100 paces, Halt—Fire twice, oblique to right and left	} sec. 166	{	In the obliquing, and in the volleys the front rank kneels.
				The music may occasionally play, and drums roll, while the line advances.
	Advance in line 100 paces—Halt—Fire two volleys—Port arms at the last one, and half cock			The music will play, when advancing at open ranks.
	Open ranks—Advance within 50 paces—Halt General salute.			

Such other Manœuvres, as may at the time be required.

The number of paces mentioned in the several movements are not positive, but are supposed to be nearly such as will give the intended relative situations. If the ground allows the marches to the rear and front to be longer, it will be so much the better.

No improper pauses should be made betwixt the connected parts of the same movement. The detached points necessary in formation should be timeously prepared and given.

The advance of the regiment should instantly succeed the forming of the line; and when it arrives and halts at the point where it is to fire, the firing ought instantly to commence at the word *Halt*; for, the regiment having been apprized, during the march, of the nature of the required firing, no improper delay need therefore be made.

The greatest care is to be taken by the officers and under officers in the rear (whose principal attention this is), that the rear ranks are well locked up in the firings, and that in loading they do not fall back.

The line, if retiring, halts fronts, at one command; and instantly begins firing, having been apprized during its movement of the nature of the firing.

The pause betwixt each of the firing words, *Make Ready, Present, Fire*, is the same as the ordinary

time, viz. the 75th part of a minute, and no other pause should be made betwixt the words.

In firing by *Companies by wings*. Each wing carries on its fire independant, without regard to the other wing, whether it fires from the centre to the flanks, or from the flanks to the centre. If there are five companies in the wing, two pauses will be made betwixt the fire of each, and the make ready of the succeeding one. If there are four companies in the wing, three pauses will be made betwixt the fire of each, and the make ready of the succeeding one. This will allow sufficient time for the first company to have again loaded, and shouldered at the time the last company fires, and will establish proper intervals between each.

In firing by *Grand Divisions*, three pauses will be made betwixt the *fire* of each division, and the *make ready* of the succeeding one.

In firing by *Wings*, one wing will make ready the instant the other is shouldering.—The commanding officer of the regiment should fire the wings.

In firing companies by *Files* each company fires independant.—When the right file presents, the next makes ready, and so on.—After the first fire, each man as he loads comes to a recover, and the file, again fires without waiting for any other; the rear rank men should have their eyes on their front rank men, and be guided by, and present with, them.

In general, after the march in front, and halt of the regiment, company or platoon firing should begin from the centre, and not from the flanks.—In other cases, and in successive formations, it may begin from whatever division first arrives, and halts on its ground.

If two or more regiments are inspected together, they will form in one line with the interval as laid down....receive the general,...march past,...and conform in all respects as the single regiment.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

A SUMMARY OF GENERAL ATTENTIONS.

WHEN the LIGHT INFANTRY companies are in line with their regiments they should form and act in every respect as a company of the regiment, but when not in line their files may be loosened to six inches. Distances of files

Open order should be two feet between each file.— Open order. The necessity of increasing this distance must depend on circumstances, and be regulated at the moment by the commanding officer.

The files may be extended from right, left, or centre, according to circumstances; in executing it each front rank man must carefully take his distance from the man next to him, on that side from which the extension is made; the rear rank men conform to the movement of their file leaders. Manner of extending.

When the company is not in extended order, all firings should be by single men, each firing as quick as he can, consistent with loading properly: the firing to begin from the flank, or from the point first formed.

In firing in extended order, it should be a standing rule, that the two men of the same file are never unloaded together, for which purpose, as soon as the front rank man has fired he is to slip round the left of the rear rank man, who will make a short pace for- Firing.

ward, and put himself in the others place, whom he is to protect while loading.—When the first man returns his ramrod he will give his comrade the word *ready*, after which, and not before, he may fire and immediately change places as before.

Advancing and retreating.

The same method of firing should be observed when advancing or retreating, which must always be in *ordinary time* (especially if cannon are ordered to the front with the light companies, which may often be the case)—Particular attention must be paid to cease firing on the first word, or signal for that purpose.

To cease firing.

Movements in quick time.

All movements of the light companies, except when firing, advancing, or retreating, should be in *quick time*.

Never to run unless ordered.

The light companies should never run so as to exceed the Indian pace, unless particularly ordered, and in that case they are to preserve their order; and it should be a rule that the two men of the same file never separate on any account whatever.

Avoid confusion.

The utmost care should be taken to avoid confusion, which too much hurry, even in the smallest bodies, will certainly occasion.—The intermixture of files should never be allowed of.

File movements.

Though all movements should be made in *front* as much as possible, yet, from the nature of those of light infantry, and the ground they are more particularly liable to traverse, file movements may frequently be necessary.—All such should be made from one of the flanks by previously facing to it, and the files to loosen, so as to march perfectly at ease, but not more.

Forming to the front.

In forming, the inversion of files or of ranks should not be attended to if time is thereby gained..... *Forming to the front* should be done by the file moving briskly up to the right or left of the leading file as ordered.

Forming to right or left..... The leading file will halt and face as directed, as will the succeeding ones as they come to their proper distances. Right or left.

Forming forward to right or left..... The leading file halts and faces as directed; the succeeding files lead round the rear, and form to the same front as the leading file has done, and at their proper distances. Forward to right or left.

When marching to the rear by files, and to *form to the front.....* The leading file will halt and front, the succeeding files will go round the rear of the leading file, and form on the right or left of it as directed..... *Forming to right or left, forward to right or left* is done in the same manner as when marching to the front. Marching to rear and forming.

All *signals, words of command, and directions,* are for the officer commanding the company or division, who gives the necessary orders in consequence. Signals, &c. for officers commanding.

The *necessary signals* will be previously settled, and as they should be very few and simple, the officers and non-commissioned officers are expected to be masters of them. Signals.

The officer commanding the company will be on the right, covered by a serjeant..... The next on the left also covered by a serjeant..... The youngest officer in the rear. In extended order the post of the officers and serjeants is always in the rear equally divided, where they must pay particular attention that the men preserve their order, and that they level, fire, and load coolly and properly; they must likewise be attentive to direct them to the supposed object of attack. Post of officers.

In marching by files the officer commanding leads; by divisions each officer leads one. The supernumerary officer, if there be one, is in both cases, with the officer commanding, ready to obey any directions he may receive from him.

Taking
post.

When a light company or detachment is ordered to take post on any particular spot, it is to be the business of the officer commanding it to take the best advantage of the ground, observing that he must never disperse his company; but if it should be necessary to make small detachments from it, he must still preserve a part of his company or detachment as a reserve on which those detachments may fall back; and this should be a general rule in all cases where the strength of the party is sufficient to allow of making detachments from it.

To cover
situations
of defence.

The officers must also see that in situations of defence the men cover themselves with trees, walls, large stones, or whatever may present itself. In firing from behind trees, large stones, &c. they are to present to the right of the object which covers them; and in changing places with the other man of the file, after firing, they will step back, and to the left, so that the rear rank man may step forward without being exposed.

Arms show
carried.

The arms of light infantry in general should be carried sloped, and with their bayonets fixed. Flanking and advanced parties however, or parties in particular situations, carry them trailed, and without bayonets, for the purpose of taking cooler and more deliberate aim.

*Light Infantry attached to respective Regiments
when in Line.*

Divisions
cover 2d
and 7th
compa-
nies.

The light company will be posted in the rear of its respective regiment, divided in two divisions; that on the right will be in the rear of the second company, that on the left in the rear of the seventh company, and they will at all times observe the distance of thirty paces. The captain, or officer commanding, will be with the right division.

Post of
command-
ing officer.

When the line breaks into column, if the light companies receive no particular orders for covering either the front or flanks of the column, they will wheel as the companies of the regiment do, and conform themselves exactly to the movements of the second and seventh companies, so as at all times to be in their proper places.

Line
breaks in-
to column.

If the line forms a close column, and the light companies receive no particular orders, they are to form by companies, and close up in the rear of the column, in the same manner as their respective regiments.

Line
forms
close co-
lumn.

When the column deploys into line, the light companies will face each as its regiment does, file with it in the rear; and when the regiment forms in the line, will take its proper post in divisions behind the second and seventh companies.

Line de-
ploys.

If the light companies are ordered to cover the line to the front, either by word or signal, the divisions will move to the front, from their inner flanks, round the flanks of the regiment; and when at the distance of 50 paces, the leading flanks will wheel towards each other, so as to meet opposite the centre of the regiment, opening their files gradually from the rear, so as to cover the whole extent of the regiment; the serjeant-coverer of each division attending to the files taking their proper distance, the files are to halt and front of themselves. In this position, and in all extended order, the post of the officer commanding is in the rear of the centre, and the movements are to be regulated by the company belonging to the regiment, which regulates those of the line.

Cover
front of
regiments.

Post of
command-
ing officer.

When the light companies are called in, the line may either be halted or advancing. In the first case they will retire towards the line, closing to their outer flanks by degrees, so as when they come near their regiments they may be in two divisions, ready to file round the flanks of the regiment to their places. If

Line halt-
ed or ad-
vancing
when
light in-
fantry are
called in.

the line is advancing, they will only close to their outer flanks, so as to be in two divisions by the time the line comes up to them, when they will instantly face outward, and file to the rear.

Light Infantry Companies formed in Regiment.

Move-
ment
same as
the line.

When the Light Infantry companies are assembled in regiment, their movements must be on the same principles as those of the line; the officers and non-commissioned officers posted in the same manner, and, as far as possible, the same words of command should be used; it is in their rapidity alone that they must be distinguished, to facilitate which the files should be loosened to the distance of six inches, but great care should be taken that rapidity does not degenerate into confusion.

Quick
time.

When two or more companies are together, they should consider themselves as a regiment, the senior officer taking the command, leaving the immediate command of his own company to the next officer belonging to it. As light infantry seldom act in large bodies, all their movements may be in quick time; but, when in column, the same attention must be paid to the pivots covering, and the preservation of distances, as is done by the line; the doing so will always be found the quickest way of forming by precluding the necessity of much after-dressing.

Covering
pivots, &c.

Regulat-
ing com-
pany.

In marching in line to the front, a regulating company must be named, by which the others must carefully dress, and whose movements they must follow. The officer leading this regulating company must take points on which to march perpendicular to the front of the regiment, and must lead steadily on them, though in quick time; without these precautions, and great attention being paid to them, the march

in front must soon become irregular, the files will inevitably intermix, and great confusion must be the consequence.

A regiment of light infantry may occasionally be ordered to run, for the purpose of anticipating an enemy going to occupy any particular post ; but, in doing so, the utmost care should be taken that confusion do not ensue : for which purpose the velocity should never exceed that at which the divisions can keep together and dressed ; the distances must be preserved as much as possible. Running must generally be in a column ; but in a case of absolute necessity to make a very quick movement to the front, with a regiment of four or five companies or more, the best and easiest way of doing it without confusion will be in *echellon*, by companies, each retired six paces from the preceding one.

May occasionally run.

But generally in column.

May in Echellon.

All columns of light infantry should be formed by sub-divisions, that is, half companies.

The forming from open column to the front may frequently be done by the divisions obliquing to the right or left of the leading division, and if necessary firing as they come up. Light infantry firing in divisions should be always by single men, as before laid down.

Forming from open column.

Firing in divisions.

Regiments of light infantry may frequently find it necessary to move by file through woods, and over very rough countries : In all cases where it is practicable it should be done from the right or left of companies, and distances must be preserved for forming in the quickest manner possible. Whenever one company *forms*, the rest are to do the same, even supposing they do not hear the word or signal for that purpose.

Movement by files.

If to *form to the front* the leading files of each company halts and dresses, the rest move up to the right or left of them to their proper places.

Forming in front.

Forming
in right or
left.

If to *form to the right* or *left*, the companies first form separately, and move up and dress with what will then be the front company, by which means the officer commanding will have it in his power to keep such companies in reserve as he thinks proper, as also in forming to throw them to the right or left of the front company, as circumstances may require; the companies which are to dress with the front company are to move up to it obliquely in line.

Advanced
and flank-
ing par-
ties.

A regiment of light infantry marching through a wood should have parties in front and on its flanks, in proportion to the strength of the regiment. The parties should march in front with extended file, and if attacked must take post and defend themselves till supported or called in.

To secure
a wood.

When ordered to secure a wood of no very great extent, the regiment should go through it, and take post on the opposite side, within its skirt, so as to have the plain before it: In this, as well as in all other cases, parties should be detached 30 or 40 yards on the flanks.

Firing in
line.

When firing in line advancing, the march must be very slow, the line must be preserved, and the officers must take care to point out the supposed object of attack, and see that the men direct their fire to it; very particular attention should be paid that the fire is directed to the proper object, and that it ceases on the first word or signal for that purpose.

Co-opera-
tion with
line.

When the light infantry in regiment is detached from the line, the officer commanding must take care to understand thoroughly the nature of the intended movement, so as to be certain of co-operating with the line with exactness and precision.

To take
post.

In general, the method of taking post with a regiment of light infantry, whether large or small, must depend upon the intelligence of the officer who commands it, but he must observe the same rule as was

given for a company, viz. Whatever detachments he may find necessary to make, always to keep the most considerable part together as a reserve.

The success of any engagement in a wood or strong country depends upon the coolness and presence of mind of the commanding officer, and silence and obedience of the men, fully as much as upon their bravery.

The arms of the light infantry, when in regiment, while in movement, should be generally sloped, but always by order, and their bayonets should be fixed.

If at any time a regiment of light infantry is ordered into the line, the files must be closed, and it should in every respect act as other regiments of the line.

Should two light companies be attached to one regiment they will act each as a division of the single company, and observe their stations behind the 2d and 7th companies of the regiment.

The Signals.

The SIGNALS.....to *advance* ; to *retreat* ; to *halt* ; to *cease* firing : To *assemble*, or call in all parties ; should always be considered as fixed and determined ones, and should never be changed. The bugle horn of each company should make himself perfect master of them.

All signals should be repeated.

All of those signals made from the line or column are to convey the intention of the commanding officer of the line to the officer commanding the light infantry, who will either communicate them to the several companies or detachments by word or signal.

PART IV.

OF THE LINE.

ALL great bodies of troops are formed in one or more lines.

Each line is divided into right and left wings.

Each wing is composed of 1, 2, or more divisions.

Each division is composed of 1, or more brigades.

Each brigade is formed of 2, 3, or 4 regiments.

Each regiment is composed of 2 battalions.

These bodies have their immediate commanders, subordinate to each other.

Regiments are formed in line at a distance of 12 paces from each other, and this interval is occupied by 2 cannon, which are attached to each regiment.— There is no increased distance betwixt brigades, unless particular circumstances require it. In exercise, should there be no cannon betwixt the regiments, the interval may be reduced to six paces.



MOVEMENTS OF A LINE.

1. The movements and manœuvres of a considerable line are similar to, and derived from, the same general principles as those of the single regiment; they will be compounded, varied, and applied, according to circumstances, ground, and the intentions

of the commanding officer ; but their modes of execution should remain unchangeable, and known to all. The greater the body, the fewer and the more simple ought to be the manœuvres required.

2. If several regiments exercise or manœuvre together, the commanding officer of the line or column gives his short orders of caution or execution to the commander of the regulating regiment of the line, or of the head of the column, where he himself generally is ; and sometimes to the commander of the regiment to which he is then nearest, and each regiment commander repeats them loud without delay. When any complicated or combined movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it must be communicated clearly to the commanders of corps by detached officers, before its execution can be ordered to commence. The several chiefs of brigades, &c. watch over, and direct the interior movements of their respective bodies ; they should repeat the general orders of execution given, if they see that it is necessary, and announce such preparatory ones as are verbally sent to them.

Circulation of commands

3. When the general order is not heard or understood by part of a line, each regiment commander (where the intention is obvious) will conform as quickly as possible to the movements which he sees executed to his right or left, according to the point from whence the movement begins ; but platoon officers execute only on the orders of their regiment commander.

4. The commander in chief should always himself loudly announce his commands of execution, as **MARCH**, or **HALT**, and the commanders of regiments will, without waiting for each other, endeavour in the same moment to repeat them : If officers are quick, observing, firm, and decided in their commands, such repetition will be instantaneous.

Commands of execution

5. It is impossible to ascertain the words of command to be given in all cases. Where such are not pointed out, they must depend on the circumstances of the situation, and be short, clear, and expressive of what is to be done. Where they are not comprehended, they must be repeated, and no operation begun, till its intention is well understood; otherwise that disorder, which may be originally prevented, is not easily remedied if once it has taken place.

Cauti-
onary com-
mands.

6. When troops are halted, explanatory cautions are proper before they are put in march: but when they are in motion, and in situations where perfect correctness is expected, as in the march in line, and in the prolonging of an alignement, no caution should precede the word HALT, but the whole should at once firmly halt. This is to be understood of a column of manœuvre, but where a column of march is unavoidably, from impediments of the route, a little opened out, and that its head stops in order to remedy such extension, or to form in line, the several rear regiments will be halted successively at their just distances.

Regulat-
ing body
in move-
ment.

7. The movements of all great bodies are made either in line or column. In line they are in general regulated by a regiment of that flank which is nearest to, and is to preserve the appui, or which is to make the attack: In column they are directed by its head, and the commander of the whole is with the regulating body. There are very few cases in which the centre ought to regulate, although the direct march of the line in front appears to be the easiest conducted by a regiment of the centre. If an enemy is to be turned, or an attack made, it is by that flank that such movements are led: It is the flank that must preserve the line of appui in all movements in front: If the line is thrown backward or forward, it is generally on a flank point: If the line breaks into column, it is the head or leading flank of that column

which conducts, and whose writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body, and such head becomes a flank when formed into line: It is seldom that an attack is formed from the centre, and a movement seldomer need be. The commander should therefore be on which ever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he proposes to make the attack, or to counteract the attempts of the enemy.

8. No considerable body should ever be assembled, or formed for action, without a proportion of it being placed in reserve, or second line, and more or less strong, according to circumstances. Reserves.

9. Where several and supporting lines of attack are formed, the second should out-flank the first, the third the second, &c. the advanced one being thereby strengthened and supported on its outward wing. Supporting lines.

10. The cannon attached to regiments, whether in line or column, should accompany in all situations the movements of their proper regiments. Those that are brigaded, should make a separate object. Cannon.

11. The general firings of the line are executed separately and independently by each regiment. Firings.

12. The chief commander of a line should have several mounted officers, or other intelligent persons, at his disposal, both to circulate his orders, and to mark and determine such original points as become necessary in movement. The adjutants of regiments are in general wanted to assist in the separate formations of their regiments. Necessary aids.

13. Partial signals of the drum for a regiment must not be given in line. But from the regiment where the chief commander is, and by his particular direction, such signal may when proper be made for the whole (but not repeated): If halted and standing at ease to assemble: If assembled to be ready to march: If firing in line for a general cessation: and Signals of the drum.

before a march to mark the proper cadence by 5 or 6 strong taps. Signals that cannot with propriety be applied in service should not be used in exercise; and it is evident that no loud signals, or even commands, music, or drums, can be used in columns of route, or in movements made near to, though not in presence of, an enemy, as it is most important on such occasions to conceal them, and not unnecessarily to discover them to the enemy.

Inversion
of the line
in forma-
tion some-
times
necessary.

14. Although in general the *INVERSION* of all bodies in line is to be avoided, yet there are situations where this rule must be dispensed with, and the quickest formation to a particular front thereby obtained. The regiment or line may be obliged to face to the right about, the more readily to oppose a danger, instead of changing its position by a counter-march: it may even be under the necessity of forming to a flank with its rear rank in front. The column with its right in front may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up and support that point, so that the right of the line will become the left. Part of a second line may double round on the extremity of a first line, thereby to out-flank an enemy. A corps moving to a flank by lines may be obliged in the quickest manner to form up to the front of its march, so that the new lines shall be composed each of parts of the old ones. Many other situations may be imagined, where opposing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where an inversion of the divisions of the line will gain much time, and becomes absolutely necessary when the formation is required from the point of appui, and near to an enemy. Troops must therefore be accustomed to such operations; but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwise in such critical situations confusion is very easily produced, and will even be attended with the most fatal consequences.

OPEN COLUMN OF THE LINE.

1. The great changes of situation of the line are performed in open column of manœuvre.

2. The line breaks into open column by wheels of the quarter circle.

3. The general circumstances attending the open column have been already explained under that head, in part three.

4. The several general directions given for the single regiment in open column, extend to each regiment that makes part of a considerable column, and their minute observance is then most especially essential, and should be carefully recollected.

5. In open column, the leading division of each regiment, will preserve the distance of intervals between regiments in addition to that of its own front. Intervals.
—The column of companies or sub-divisions marching at half or quarter distance will preserve an interval between regiments equal to the front of their column.

6. Regiments are to a line, what companies are to a regiment. Not only the whole divisions of a regiment, but the whole regiments of a line or column should MARCH off, and HALT together; and to ensure this in the exercise of considerable bodies, signals of cannon are often given for such purpose. In most situations the quick circulation of verbal commands must be sufficient.

7. The same rules that direct the entry and march of one regiment in an alignment on which it is to form, Points of formation in open column.
(§ 115. 118.) apply with increased attention to those of the most considerable column.—The point where the head of the column enters an alignment, and

which is never quitted by a mounted or other officer but as he is relieved, and until the whole have entered; the point where the head of the leading regiment halts, in order to form; the several adjutants who place themselves in the true line; the prolongation of regiments which may have formed up; all these are so many marked points within the line itself, on which the dressing of pivots or regiments can be regulated, either while marching in the line, or when each halts and is to be corrected, in order to wheel up into line.

Post of
command-
ing officer
and adju-
tant in for-
mations.

8. When the head of a regiment in a general column, or in its individual column, halts on a line on which it is to form, the commanding officer must invariably be at that head point, instantly to correct his pivots on the adjutant, who is invariably at the rear of the regiment in the true prolonged line on which it is marching or which it is to take up.—In like manner the commanding officer is with the leading division of an Echellon coming into line and the adjutant marks the other flank of the regiment on which the divisions are successively corrected.

Distant-
points are
of great
advan-
tage.

9. In formations or changes of direction the commander in chief will if possible preserve and procure conspicuous distant points in their prolongation, which when known will assist others as well as himself, in keeping the line in the position he intends.

Situations
in which
move-
ments in
open co-
lumn are
essential.

10. The movements in open column of manœuvre are particularly necessary. When a line formed in order of battle is to extend in the same direction to either flank in order to follow the march of an enemy, or to out-flank him if he remains posted; nor is any movement more important, or can be more securely or effectually practised against an enemy inaccurate and inferior in discipline, who in attempting the counter-movement is generally thrown into confusion.—Or, when arriving in column of march on any ground the commander in determining the general

direction that his line is to take, shall not have been able to ascertain the points where he would fix the flanks of it ; but after entering into it is obliged in consequence of the position or manœuvres of the enemy, either to stop his own movement sooner than he intended, or to prolong it, beyond the point he originally meant.



GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE composed of several regiments are according to circumstances effected by the *Echellon* march, the *filing* of divisions, or the *march* of regiment in open column,—and points in the new line should always in due time be ascertained, at which the leading division of each regiment is to enter.

1st. *When a considerable line is to take up a new position PARALLEL or nearly so to the old one, in front or rear of it, and facing either to, or from the old line.* Fig. 74.
E.D.

If in front of, and facing as the old line. { It may be done (according as the new line out-flanks the old line, connected with other circumstances)—by the march in *line* : the march in *Echellon* divisions : the *filing* of platoons.

Or, the line will break into open column to whatever hand the new position out-flanks the old one.—The several regiments are then disengaged and put in march in separate columns ; flank points of entry for each are in the mean time preparing by the detached adjutants.—The leader of the 2d regiment from the directing flank has a point in or before the new line ascertained to him his adjutant not being yet fixed, Fig. 75. and marches upon it : The leader of the first regiment

will preserve the parallelism, or give gradually the new inclination to the heads of the other regiments. These during the march never having overpassed the line of their leading ones, nearly dressing up, and preserving their regiment distances, arrive at their adjutants and form in line by wheeling, filing, or Echellon marching, as may have been ordered.

*If in front of,
and facing
to the old
line.*

The regiment columns will as before enter and form on the line. Within themselves they need not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left, nor can it well be avoided, unless—by countermarching the line before the movement: or, by a complicated operation during the movement: or by the countermarching first the regiment and then the line, after the movement.

*If in rear of,
and facing
as the old
line.*

The same identical operations according to circumstances are applied as when the position in front is taken, *facing as the old line.*—The line or echellons after facing about; or the heads of regiment columns after breaking; march to the rear, and front or form in line *facing as the old line.*

*If in the rear
of, and fa-
cing from
the old line.*

The regiment columns will lead to the rear and enter and form on the new line, the other circumstances will take place as when the new line is in front of and *facing to the old line.*—The Echellon movements will not apply in this case without inverting the ranks.

Fig. 74. 2d. *When a considerable line is to take up a new position which (or whose prolongation) INTERSECTS to the right or left of the old line, and which faces either to or from the old line.*
C.B.

When the new line faces from the old line. { The line will break to which ever flank is nearest to the new position. The heads of regiment columns will be separately conducted to their points in the new line, being regulated by the leading flank regiments; they will again enter into the general open column, and form in line by wheeling up. Fig. 75.

Or, the line after breaking to the flank may continue its march in column, enter and prolong the new line, 'till its head halts at its point in the new line. The divisions of the leading regiment or of such others as then ought, will *file*; and the other rear regiments will disengage their heads, and separately march off in column to their several points of entry on the new line, which are marked by their adjutants.

If the angle formed by the two lines is not above the half of a right one, and that the flank of the new line is not very distant, this change may be made by the Echellon march of divisions.

When the new line faces to the old line. { The line will break into open column towards the new position. The general column will enter the new line at its nearest point, prolong it if necessary, and when the head halts, the rear regiments will disengage and march to their points of entry in the new line.

3d. When a considerable line has to take up a new position, which (or the prolongation of which) INTERSECTS the body of the line, and which faces to or from the old line. Fig. 74. F.

When the new line intersects the body of the old line, and faces to either flank. { The position will be changed by the Echellon march of divisions on the central point.

Or, the division which is in the point of intersection will place its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction, and the line will break inwards and backwards facing to that division. The divisions of the central regiment and of the one on each side of it will *file* and place themselves in column, before and behind the standing division. The other regiments will each be conducted in a separate column to its point of entry on the new line, when it will throw itself into the general column, and wheel up into line when ordered.

When the prolongation of the new line intersects the body of the line and faces to either flank.

The line will break to the division which stands in the point of intersection.—Every thing between that division, and the flank which is to be farthest removed from the old line will make a change of position on the named division, and stand in open column on the new line ; facing to the named division.—All the divisions that have so changed position will each countermarch by files : The line will then be prolonged, till the rear of the column arrives at its point.

Or, the part of the line which is first thrown into the new direction may so effect it by the Echellon march on the named fixed division. The whole will then wheel into open column and prolong the line till the rear arrives at its point.

Or, the named division being placed with its pivot perpendicular to the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend, the rest of the line breaks inwards and backwards towards it.—That division is then put in march, and is itself followed in column by that part of the line whose flank will naturally first come to its ground : The other part of the line moves

Fig. 82.

on at the same time in a separate column a-breast of it, the whole being thus in a double column of divisions as marched off from the centre. The head and the column immediately behind it, *halts* when its following flank arrives at its proper point, but the other column proceeds, and throws itself into open column in front of the named division.—The line is formed by the wheeling up of divisions.

§ 179.....*Taking up Lines of March, and Formation.*

1. The general direction of any straight alignement on which troops are to form is always determined before they enter on it, and the point in that line at which their head is to arrive must next be ascertained. Whenever the troops are to march on it, in column, or to form correctly, the line must be accurately traced out, and sub-divided by mounted officers; and such officers when trained to that purpose, are the most general and surest points to move upon particularly in situations where heights and valleys intervene, and where no remarkable objects distant or intermediate occur in the direction, which (perhaps as relative to that of the enemy) must be chosen.—Another great advantage thence arising is, that although a distant object of march may not be seen or known but by those at the head of the column; yet the detached marking officers must be known by every pivot leader to be there placed for the purpose of marching or forming upon. Such officer, if he remains mounted, and which he will always do, when he can depend on the steadiness of his horse, will face to the line and have his horses head directly over it: If he is dismounted he will himself stand on and faced to the line; and with the hand which is farthest from the column, he will hold his horse by the head, and rather behind himself.

Lines of
march and
formation,
best given
by mount-
ed offi-
cers.

Distant
objects
of march
or forma-
tion.

2. Before a column of march or manœuvre approaches the ground, where it is to form, the commander will ascertain as circumstances may determine him, the advanced and distant points at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of the line when formed. If he enters his alignment at one of those determined points, he continues his march straight upon the posted intermediate officer and the other point. But if he enters the alignment, somewhere between them, it then becomes necessary to ascertain the spot where the direction of his march intersects the new alignment, for at that point the head of the column arrives in it.

Method
of finding
an inter-
mediate
point be-
tween two
distant ob-
jects.

3. When the head of the advancing column approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon.... Two officers, R, S, are shewn the flank distant points of the alignment, P, T, and are sent forward to determine the intermediate point S, at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction. They separate from each other 80 or 100 paces, go to the side to which the column is not to wheel, and R, immediately places himself in the line of S, P, advanced before the head of the column. They then both move on R, always preserving, S, in a line with P, and each describing the portion of a circle upon P, as a centre,—S, looks to R. and moves on, while the point T, continues to be advanced before him : but the instant he has brought, R, in a line with T, they both halt, and the 4 points are then in the same line : R, remains fixed, till S, has shifted to the point S, of intersection, and to enter at which the head of the column is now approaching—This done R, also moves if necessary to within 50 or 60 paces of S, and S, R, thus become a general base, which the appointed officers and adjutants immediately prolong for the march of the column, and in which they are assisted and corrected by the known distant points.

Fig. 76.

This method of finding an intermediate point between two given, and perhaps inaccessible objects, must be thoroughly understood; and more than one column may in this manner ascertain their relative points of entry in the same line.—Officers employed to give the direction may with moderate practise take it up at the gallop, and therefore no halt, or stop of the column is to be apprehended.

4. When two bodies are in march to gain the same given point; the above method may most usefully be applied to ascertain which of them can first arrive at it.—The column B, and enemy D, are both in march on the point S. The leader of B, observes a distant point at C, beyond and a-head of the enemy D, If he can continue to keep this object open, and in front of the enemy, it is a certain sign that he approaches fastest to his wished for point; but if it appears as if moving towards the rear of the enemies march, it indicates his disadvantage, and the attempt must be given up in time.

To determine which of two columns arrive first at a given point.

Fig. 76.

§ 180.....*When a considerable Open Column.....Enters
.....Marches.....and Forms.....on a straight Alignment.*

1. Before the head of a considerable column of march enters a straight line which it is to prolong and form upon, the point *s*, of entry must be marked by a fixed person, who is to remain there till he is relieved; also another point *r*, at least 60 or 70 paces from the first, and in the exact direction which is to be given to the new line. Three other persons *m*, *n*, *o*, immediately and successively prolong themselves on *r*, *s*, as the original base; and being also corrected from *s*, upon such distant point (if any), as the commander shall have taken, they place themselves at least 200 paces from *s*, and from each other.

Necessary points of entry and march.

Fig. 77.

Prolongation of the line by adjutants.

Fig. 79.

2. The line being thus in time prepared, the head of the first regiment arrives and wheels into the direction at *s*, and the adjutant of that regiment remains at the point of entry till the last division of his regiment has entered; he then gallops on for about 200 paces, and posts himself on the line. The adjutant of the 2d regiment, who has in his turn placed himself at the point of entry, as soon as his last division has entered at it, gallops on and relieves the first adjutant, who goes on about 200 paces farther, and and again posts himself. When the 3d regiment has entered, its adjutant relieves the second, that second relieves the first, and the first proceeds 200 paces farther, and again alignes himself. In this manner, and till the last regiment has entered the line, do the adjutants successively and diligently relieve each other. If any of the adjutants overtake or interfere with the advanced persons, who in the front are prolonging the line, such adjutants may return to their regiments, as being no longer of service.

Prolongers of the march.

Fig. 79.

3. As to the person *m*, *n*, *o*, who are in the front of the column, two of them at least having taken their station by the time that the leading regiment enters the line, as soon as the head of it approaches the first of them, he gallops on and new alignes himself beyond the other two; and this operation each successively repeats till the column halts, which has always had (independant of any accidental distant point) two such persons to march upon.

Commanding officers of regiments.

4. So many fixed points being thus ascertained, all which are successively passed by the pivots of the column, the accuracy of direction cannot but be preserved; but as a farther aid, each commanding officer of a regiment is at the point of entry invariably to place himself on the flank of his leading division, and in this situation, moving on the posted adjutants, he (allowing for the breadth of his own horse) cannot fail to keep his regiment in the true line, by frequent-

ly going before his division, turning round, and correcting his flanks if necessary, on the nearest adjutant in the rear, which the wave of a hand will suffice to do. As each commanding officer arrives at a posted adjutant, he must go behind him, and again take up the flank of the division.

5. Every division of the line having carefully taken its just wheeling distance before arriving, or at latest when it does arrive at the point of entry, and from thence having invariably preserved the step by a steady march; the pivots also (occasionally corrected backwards) having preserved the just line of the several adjutants, and no halt, or alteration of step, or distance, having been made by any one division or regiment from the instant that it has entered the line: The whole HALT at the same moment, on that word being loudly and rapidly repeated by each commanding officer, who immediately examines and corrects his pivots, and the column is thus prepared for the next order of wheeling into line.

Attentions in the march.

6. If the column halts when the last regiment has entered, the adjutants remain fixed till the line is corrected and formed: but if the column is still carried on, then the person posted at the point of entry, when he sees the rear of the column approaching the last adjutant, quits that point, relieves that adjutant (who proceeds, &c.), and repeats that operation till the column halts and forms in line.

Adjutants.

7. When the column halts in an alignement to form, the various marked points in it which then exist give the greatest facility to commanding officers instantly to correct their pivots, if necessary, each (as has been mentioned) on the next posted adjutant in his rear; and which will also generally be on the pivot of the front division of the succeeding regiment, in the same manner as companies dress from the pivot of one to the point of the next; for, such correction should be merely internal, unless some inexcusable

Correction of pivots.

sable mistake has deranged the whole, and thrown the rear of the column out of its true direction.

8. If great accuracy is required in the movements of a single regiment column, it is evident how much more essential it becomes in a considerable one, where faults would operate in the proportion of its extent, if they are not immediately prevented by the facility with which mounted officers can line and correct upon each other.

9. When a column halts to form, such persons as are then marking that line should not quit their posts till so ordered, or till the line is put in march.

10. In marching in an alignement, if the rear or front of a regiment has evidently deviated from the true line, the head of the succeeding one is not to follow its bad example, but must preserve the general given direction into which the other is immediately to return.—And no commanding officer of a regiment, when marching in an alignement, is on any account to alter the rate of march, or partially to halt, and thereby to derange the whole column.

Aids in
preserv-
ing the
alignement.

11. Although the posting and successive relieving of adjutants on the line will undoubtedly preserve the direction, yet troops that are sufficiently trained ought certainly to prolong and form justly on any line, by having 2 given points of march always ahead of the column, one point of entry marked and remaining, the commanding officers of regiments moving correctly on the flank of their leading divisions, and the adjutants or other mounted officers only occasionally stopping in the true line till the regiment they belong to has passed.—This should suffice to correct any small inaccuracy of the pivots, and keep the whole in the general direction given by the officers advanced in front of the column.

Step.

12. As the justness of step determines the accurate movement in column, that taken by the first leader

should be frequently referred to and examined by the plummet; and every regiment marching in column should, in order to regulate its march, have in its front a non-commissioned officer, trained and steadied to the equality of step.

13. Where circumstances determine the march of the column, on a conspicuous distant object, T, it is an essential help, and must be immediately declared to the leaders of the column, and as soon as possible looked out for, and remarked by all mounted officers; and if such another object also happens to be in its prolongation to the rear, it will aid in the correction of the march, and in the formation of the line: but it will oftener happen that no such objects can be taken, and that the alignement depends on the direction (determined by relative circumstances) that the commander at first gives to two posted persons, and which is afterwards prolonged by others.

Fig. 78.

Distant object of march advantageous.

14. When part of a column is in low ground, or crossing a valley, its march can be directed and assisted by the rear points, at times when the front points of march are not to be seen.

Fig. 79.

15. No circumstance whatever should occasion an increase of the proper distance betwixt regiments in column.—The regiment guns will therefore march a-breast, and always well closed up to the rear division of the preceding regiment; or, according to circumstances, they will move on one of the flanks opposite to their proper intervals; but if ordered on the front or pivot flank, they can occasionally fire if so required. Music, pioneers, &c. are never in the intervals betwixt regiments, in line or column of manœuvre, but are on the flanks of the column, or in the rear of the line.

Movement of regiment guns and justness of intervals.

16. The most considerable column ought to be able to MARCH in the alignement with perfect exactness; to HALT; to WHEEL into line; to MARCH

Correctness of movement.

forward; to HALT; and to FIRE; without more than a momentary pause between each operation, and without any necessity of dressing, correcting distance, or any alteration whatever; and unless the regiments are equal to, and can be depended on for such operation, no critical or advantageous measure, when close to the enemy, can be attempted.

Post of
command-
ing offi-
cers of re-
giments.

17. It is only when the column of manœuvre is marching in a straight alignement that the commanding officer is invariably attached to the head of his regiment; for, in other situations of march he must by no means remain fixed at its head, but be moveable on its flank in order to watch over its general progress.

Prolonga-
tion of a
line.

18. *When a line already formed is to wheel into open column, and prolong its direction.....* Three persons *m, n, o*, take their stations in the front as points of march, and the adjutants place themselves each close to the pivot flank of his own second division.—

Fig. 79.

The column is put in motion, the last adjutant, when the rear approaches the one next to himself, relieves him, and he going on they successively relieve each other.

Fig. 78.

19. *When a line, prologing a straight direction, changes into another straight direction,* the advanced

Change of
direction.

persons *m, n, o*, will of course be first placed in that direction, the front adjutant will be at the point of change till he is relieved, and the column will proceed as before.

General
aids in
marching
in column.

20. *If the march of the column (although in open ground) is not meant to be critically straight,* then the placing of adjutants can be dispensed with, and the divisions, at their true wheeling distances, will scrupulously follow the line which the head of the column traces out: but, the better to prevent any improper deviation of the rear, commanding officers or adjutants will frequently stop at true points of the march until the rear of their regiments has passed, and al-



ways at points where the head of the column makes any considerable change of direction. If every division of a column does not accurately follow the path traced out by the leading one, opening or closing of distances must take place, running up, or stopping short, will ensue, and the column will not be in a situation to form in line with precision.

21. *When the open column of manœuvre has prolonged a straight line, stands halted, and is directed to make a change of situation on any fixed point within itself.* When the open column changes its situation on any fixed point within itself.

.....All the divisions before that point countermarch and stand faced to it; the regiment, if single, or the central regiment of the line, and the one on each side of it will file by divisions into the new column; the others will march in column, and enter where their *Rears* are to be placed. If the column is intended to proceed, the division facing the given one having taken single distance, and the others of that wing being arranged behind it, they will all countermarch, and the column may then move on. If the column is meant after such change of situation not to proceed, but immediately to form in line, then the division facing the given one having taken double wheeling distance, the line will be formed by a wheel up to the pivot flank. In either case a previous caution will determine the position of the division facing the given one.

Fig. 32.35.

§ 181.....*Formation in Line on detached Adjutants, from the Assembly or Mass of Regiments in Columns of Companies.*

1. If a column of several regiments has halted at half, quarter, or close distance, or that its regiments have assembled in contiguous columns with small intervals, and that they are to extend into a line which

is at some distance from their then situation, on their respective adjutants, and facing either to the front or to the rear.

General
prelimi-
nary at-
tentions.

2. A regiment is named as the one to be formed upon, and which may be either a flank or central regiment of the new line, but should be that one which, being placed at the point of *appui*, determines the position of the line, and therefore will commonly be a flank one. The general column, when arrived at, and standing on, the new line, should always front to the point of *appui*, whether flank or central. Each adjutant marks one certain flank of his regiment in the new line; and each in taking up his ground allows for the front and interval of his own regiment from the last placed adjutant before him. Each adjutant always marks that flank of his regiment in the new line at which its head is to enter, and at which its REAR division in column is to rest, and therefore it is that flank which is farthest from the point of *appui*; if his regiment is to march with its right in front, he marks its left; and if with the left in front, he marks its right. It is therefore often necessary, as will be mentioned, that some or all of the regiment columns should separately countermarch (§ 101.) at their point of assembly, in order to move off with their proper flank divisions in front, and thereby enter the new line at their respective adjutants.

Point of
appui de-
termined.

3. Supposing therefore that the regiments are standing in columns (the right in front), either in general column, or in contiguous line. If the position is to be taken from the *right* of the new line, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each successively marking his own left. If to be taken from the *left* the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each successively marking his own right; and the regiments, on separating from the general mass, will each countermarch, so as to arrive at its adjutant a column with the left in front. If to be taken from a *central* point

both flanks of that regiment must be marked ; its adjutant, and those of the regiments standing to its left (or behind it if in column), will mark each his own left ; the adjutants of the regiments to its right, (or before it if in column) will mark each his own right, and those regiments will in consequence countermarch so as to enter with their left in front ; and in this manner will the whole stand on the new line facing to the central point.

4. These circumstances determined and understood, all the adjutants are sent forward to the ground of the named regiment ; the general direction of the line is ascertained by stationed objects ; the flank point of entry is taken by the named adjutant ; and all the others from him successively prolonging the line, mark their respective ordered points of entry ; they are expected to give ground quickly, according to circumstances, both by their eye, and their own step, as well as by the step of their horses.

Adjutants
mark
flanks.

5. In the mean time the whole are put in motion, and when sufficiently advanced they HALT. Such regiments as are to countermarch are ordered so to do, and each then diverges to right or left, avoids crossing or interference, and marches quick to its own point of entry, opening its divisions in the course of the march. At that point a momentary halt is made ; the head division wheels into the line, the others successively follow it at open distances, and in ordinary time (§ 125. 115.), till the word HALT is given on the arrival of the rear division at that point. The regiment thus standing in open column, and its pivots being corrected on the adjutant, is ready to wheel up into the line, which is in this manner separately entered by each regiment whether it is to face to the front or to the rear of the march.

Regi-
ments en-
ter the
new line.

6. As the adjutant always marks the point where the REAR division of his regiment column is to be placed, so the point where the head one is to rest will

be of course easily known (and may be also marked in due time by another detached person), being at the distance of a proper interval and the front of a division from the preceding adjutant. The several adjutants when placed become so many points of march to the regiments that are prolonging the line.

General
rule.

7. Although unnecessary ground may seem to be gone over by the head divisions of some of the regiments, when they enter at their rear point, yet the rule that each of them shall enter the line where its REAR is to rest, is simple, general, and most readily corrects any mistakes that may be made ; and all circumstances considered, it is a quicker and surer manner of forming on the new positions than if the regiments were to enter at their head, or intermediate points.

8. When the enemy cannot possibly interrupt the movements of the detached regiments, this is an expeditious method of taking up ground in a defensive position : but it requires great exactness in the distances given by the adjutants, for, if they misjudge their points there will be false intervals in the line, which can only be remedied by the regiments marching on to their proper distances before they HALT.— If the regiment of appui is nearest to the new line, and the first to form on it, then, as all the others must enter it successively, any inaccurate marking of the adjutants may be remedied ; because each regiment without interfering with any other one, can, before it HALTS, march up to its just distance from its preceding one ; but if the regiment of appui is the last to enter the line, each must then HALT at the point marked by its adjutant, and no correction can be attempted till the regiment of appui has halted, and that the whole are in one general column.

9. Should adjutants be ordered to mark the head (instead of the rear) point of their regiment columns, and should such columns not countermarch, as is before required : In such case, each must sometimes

take distance not for the front of his own but for the front and interval of an adjoining regiment, and the column would not face to the point of *appui*; these circumstances would much tend to embarrass the formation of the line.—When an adjutant has to allow for the front of another regiment, he must be apprized of the number of files, officers included, in such regiment.

10. Although the adjutant does always mark the REAR flank of the regiment column, yet as its head point, or any intermediate one, is afterwards easily ascertained, it can be directed (when particularly so ordered) to enter at either of those points, as well as at the rear one, for, any of those operations places the whole in open column in the new line.

11. When regiments assemble in line of contiguous close columns, they should be so placed that no crossing or retardment of the after-march may be occasioned.—If the new position to be taken faces the same way as the columns do, the regiments should stand in their natural order from right to left. If the position to be taken faces to the rear of the columns, the regiments should assemble in the reverse order, so that the right one shall be on the left; or, if they otherwise assemble at first, they must countermarch in mass, in order to stand so.

12. If positions are to be taken up to the front or to the flanks.....The circumstances already mentioned will determine from what point the general line will be given, and what flank of his regiment each adjutant should mark. The several regiment columns (having countermarched, if necessary, and if standing in general column having disengaged into an Echellon position) march towards their adjutants, taking care to diverge to that hand which does not cross the path of the leading division, or of each other; and when they approach the new line, whatever way it fronts, each is in a situation to enter it at

Positions
taken to
front or
flanks.

its REAR point, or, if particularly so ordered, at any other given point.

Positions
taken to
the rear.

13. If positions are to be taken in the rear.— Each regiment will countermarch its divisions by files, so that the columns stand with their left in front ; the regiments then having the new positions before them, will proceed accordingly.

14. As in changes of position, the arrival and formation of regiments in line is generally successive ; the head point of each can be readily ascertained from the situation of the preceding regiment, even before the whole of it may be stodied in the alignement, and an under officer may in time be sent forward the more exactly to determine it. But the *rear* point of each, at which the adjutant places himself, must as to distance often depend on his eye alone, and being mounted he will always have sufficient time to take it up ; as to the direction of the line, which is the great object of his attention, he can never fail in it, if he takes it carefully from the prolongation of such objects as he sees are placed in it, and of such part of the troops as may be formed on the line.

15. The quickness and accuracy of all formations of the line, and of all changes from one position to another, depends totally on the intelligence of each commanding officer, who always conducts the leading division of his regiment to its point of entry in the new line, and also of the adjutant, who, prolonging that line, marks the point of his last division, and is himself the object on which the pivots of the column, or the divisions of the Echellon or column that successively come into line are dressed upon. When the adjutant marks the *rear* point for the entry of the regiment column, he must be accurate both in his distances and direction : When he marks it only as a point of dressing for divisions that successively arrive in line, the justness of direction is then the material object.

§ 182.....*When the rear Regiments of a Column break from it, in order to enter, and form on an Aligned line, in which the head ones have halted.*

If a considerable open column has at any time partly wheeled into and prolonged a new direction, and that the head being arrived at its point, the whole are ordered to HALT with an intention of forming line in the new direction. On the cessation of march the entire regiment nearest the line, and any partial divisions of the one preceding it, that have not entered when the whole halt, shall immediately, by FACING and FILING, gain the new line. But all the other regiments in the rear shall break from the general column, and each MARCH quick and separate in individual column till it arrives at its adjutant, who, having expeditiously lined himself on the head objects of the new line, will be placed at its rear point of entry; the regiments will then prolong the line, and, as they must have successively arrived in it, each will halt when its head is at a due distance from the preceding regiment, its pivots will be corrected on its adjutant, and it will thus be ready to wheel up into line, when the next regiment behind it shall have three divisions at least correctly standing in column on the line.—Or, the adjutants still marking the rear points to their regiments, if so ordered, the head of each may be conducted to its respective head point (which is readily ascertained), it will then HALT, FACE, and FILE into the new line, and its pivots being corrected on its adjutant, it will be ready to WHEEL up into line as in § 124.

A column marching at half, or quarter distance, may in the same manner take up its ground.—The division that is to stop at the point of entry being ascertained, such part of the column as is before that division will successively there enter the line, and prolong it at open distances.—In the mean time such re-

giments as are behind that division, breaking from the general column, will march to their respective points, and extend along the line.

§ 183.....*When a Line of several Regiments, thrown into Open Column, changes Position on a fixed flank Division.*

Fig. 34. The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, and the flank company placed perpendicular to it, as already directed (§ 120.), the whole wheel backward into open column, facing to the standing company. The flank regiment *FACES* and *FILES* into column on the new line (§ 120.), but the head division of each other regiment wheels and *MARCHES* off quick in separate column to its adjutant, who marks its *rear* point in the new line; it there enters, prolongs, and wheels up, each successively, as directed (§ 125.)—Or, if so ordered, each regiment may enter at its head point, as in (§ 124.)

§ 184.....*When a Line of several Regiments, thrown into Open Column, changes Position on a fixed central Division of any one Regiment.*

Fig. 35. The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, and the central company placed perpendicular to it, as directed (§ 122.), the whole line breaks backward into open column, so as to stand faced to the central company. The companies of the central regiment, and of the one on each side of it, proceed to *FACE*, *FILE*, and place their pivot flanks in column on the new line. (§ 122.)—But the head division of each regiment wheels and *MARCHES* quickly in separate column to which ever hand necessarily con-

conducts it towards its proper *rear* point in the new line, which is marked by its adjutant, it then enters, prolongs, &c. as in the preceding section.

In central changes of a regiment or line....The movements of the right wing, whether thrown forward or backward, are those of a column with the left in front, the rights being the pivot flanks; and the movements of the left wing are those of a column with the right in front, the lefts being the pivot flanks. In changes of position on the right of a regiment or line, the movements are those of a column with the right in front. In changes of position on the left of a regiment or line, the movements are those of a column with the left in front.

§ 185.....*When a Line of several Regiments, thrown into Open Column, changes Position on a moving central Division.*

1. The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, the named company, *a*, will be wheeled and placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to and on the new direction, fronting the way the line is to extend, and if to the rear it must therefore counter-march.—The line will then break backwards by companies, so as to stand faced to the named company. That company, *a*, will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double column by the remaining companies of the central regiment, and covered by one of those columns, viz. by that whose flank in prolonging the new line will naturally first arrive at its proper ground, and which march with their pivots upon that line. When the named division arrives at its new point, *a*, 2, it will, together with those that are marching behind it, receive the word to HALT: such divisions of its regiments, which are to be in

Fig. 80.

front of it, and are now marching by its side in column, and are separated from it by a distance of 3 or 4 paces, will move on, and by filing from their pivot flanks, will successively place themselves in column, before and facing to it, at a double wheeling distance.

2. The other regiments which moved when the central one did, which in the mean time have been marching, each in separate column led by its inward flank division, and which have been pointing to front or rear, relatively to the movements of the central regiment, approaching, but not entering into its direction, except such as would naturally follow on the prolongation of the line: Those regiments will, when the central one HALTS, march quick towards their several adjutants who have been detached to mark their rear points, enter prolong, and wheel up into line as already directed.—In this movement some of the regiments near the central one might form to advantage on their head points, by filing from their pivot flanks into line, and if so ordered they may do it accordingly.

3. If the named company is a flank one of a central regiment, in that case the whole of that regiment will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining regiment will compose another column, and march abreast of it, separated by 3 or 4 paces, till the named regiment comes to its ground and halts; the adjoining regiment will then proceed, and, by filing round from its pivot flanks, will (standing faced to the directing one) take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

4. On many occasions when the named company is to be moveable, and that it is a central one of a regiment, the whole of that regiment, if it is thought advisable, may without much loss of time be thrown into one column before and behind that company, and the companies of that regiment which are in front of

the named one, will be countermarched, in order that the whole may face the way the column is to move.— This done, the general movement of the central and other regiments, each in separate column, may begin ; and in such case, the front company of the central regiment will be the first to arrive and HALT at the point where the column is to wheel up into line.

5. This movement of the given division is equivalent to the line marching from the centre either to front or rear, and from that situation forming away to the flanks : or, to the whole line first marching forward, or backward, and then making a central change on a fixed point.—At the same time that it changes the front of a line, it carries the flanks to whatever point in that line it is ment they should rest at : It is the movement, which a second line does make, in order to comply with a change of position made by the first line, on a fixed point.

§ 186.... *When the head of a considerable open Column in March arrives at, or near the Point from which it is to take an oblique Position facing to its then Rear, and at which Point its 3d, 4th, or any other named Regiment is to be placed.*

1. In general, the column after entering the new line would continue its march in that direction, till the named division arrived and was halted at the point of intersection ; the regiments that had not entered into the line would then break off from the old direction and gain the new one.—But if such a column was marching parallel to an enemy's flank point as far as was intended, and that the object was to take an oblique line and attack that flank : in such situation it might be too hazardous to allow the rear of the column which was destined to become the refused flank of the new line, to remain so long in its parallel direction, and it might be essential to draw it farther from the enemy as soon as possible.

2. Suppose the column consists of six regiments, and that it is determined that the head of the 5th shall be placed at the point of intersection. The column moves on, and when the head of it arrives at the intersecting point in the new line, the two, or any proportion of the leading regiments, may by the successive wheeling of their divisions enter it and march along it in the ordinary manner; but as soon as the leading division of the column does enter it, the 3d, 4th, and every other regiment breaks off separately to the rear and march quick in columns to gain the new line: the 3d and 4th regiments assemble in close column a little beyond the point of intersection and the new line; the 5th entering at its adjutant who marks its rear, forms in open column on the new line, with its head at the point of intersection, and all the other rear regiments form also relatively in open column on the new line. The two leading regiments having in the mean time prolonged the line, when it comes to the turn of the 3d, it gradually takes its distances, follows in open column, as also all the others, till the whole are ordered to halt, and the line be formed by wheeling up.

3. The justness of this movement depends on the points in the new direction being taken up quickly and with precision, on the previous determination that a certain regiment or battallion of a regiment, shall pass or halt at the point of intersection; and that every part of the column which is behind that regiment shall throw itself into open column on the new line behind the point of intersection, ready to prolong or to form the line whenever it comes to its turn.

4. This movement will often take place in the change of position of a second line, and is performed by all those that are behind the division which is to stop at the point where the old and new lines intersect.—And at all times when the open column chang-

es into a direction on which it is to form, and that the division which is to be placed at the point of entry can be determined, it much facilitates the operation to make every thing behind that division gain the new line as quickly as possible, without waiting till the head of the column halts.

5. Suppose the column marching on a line parallel to an enemy's front, to have entered opposite one flank, and to be marching towards the other as if meaning to form in parallel line, but that circumstances determine to form in oblique line and attack the flank it has passed.—The column will be halted when the rear has arrived at a determined point; the direction of the oblique line, will be given; each division of the column will counter-march; the regiment that is to rest at the point of intersection will be named; the whole will be put in motion.—Two or three of the leading regiments continuing their march will by the successive wheeling of their divisions prolong the new direction; such following ones as are to be before the point of intersection, will assemble close to it; such others as are to be behind it, will at once march off quickly and separately to their point of entry in the new line, and stand in open column upon it: in proportion as the head advances the whole will extend along the line in open column, be halted, and formed by wheeling up.

6. A line formed parallel to an enemy, may change situation in the above manner, by wheeling into open column, marching on the point of intersection, and then taking up the new oblique position.

7. If a column moving parallel to an enemy, should stop and take up a new position on any point then within itself, such formation would be a central one and made either on a fixed or moveable division.

CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE.

1. The great object of a considerable close column is; to form the line to the front in the quickest manner possible; to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the adversary; and to extend in whatever direction the circumstances of the moment may require; which till it is nearly accomplished cannot be obvious to an opposite enemy: It is a situation for the assembly, more than for the march of troops: It is not formed until the head of the troops is arrived in column of whole, half or quarter distance near the ground where they are to extend into line.—The formation from close column into line is an original one, generally protected by cannon and cavalry, made at such a distance as not to be interrupted by the attempts of an enemy, and avoiding the enfilade of artillery. Its positions cannot fail to be truly taken.

2. The close column should not exceed 6, or 7, regiments; where there are more troops, it is best to form more columns if it can be done; therefore the columns of march may often be sub-divided when they come near the points of forming into line, be directed upon them, and then closed up.

3. In general the regiment close columns before they begin to deploy, should stand 2 companies in front, and 5 in depth: in this situation the right company has its officer and his serjeant on its right flank, and the left company has its officer on its left, and its serjeant on its right. § 147.

4. From close column the whole or any part of the body may be ordered to extend into line to either hand as circumstances may require.

5. When a close column is halted, each regiment of which it is composed is 3 paces from the one before it.

6. A close column must loosen its divisions before it can march in front, and its changes of direction

must be made circling and on a moving point, to enable its rear gradually to comply : If too great intervals should be made in the column, they can best be closed by a halt of the head.

7. Regiments standing in mass should be 6 paces distant from each other before deploying into line.

8. A close column of 2 or even 3 regiments, may occasionally deploy in the same manner as a single regiment does, and on any division ; but in proportion to the number of divisions does the difficulty of execution encrease, and at any rate the formation will probably be inaccurate and defective.—Therefore, when several regiments are halted in a close column, they do first deploy in mass on any named one, and thus stand in contiguous line of regiment columns, with any ordered interval between each. If the columns are of companies, the intervals will be equal to the front of a company and a half, they will then form columns of two companies each in front ; and the whole will then deploy into line on any named division of any regiment.

§ 187.....*When a Column of March (by Companies) of several Regiments forms Close Column, and then Fig. 83, extends into Line.*

CLOSE
TO QUARTER
DISTANCE.

ORDINARY.

When it is found proper to shorten the column of march, the rear divisions are ordered to close up to a certain distance. The leading division of the column either halts or shortens its step, and the rear divisions close up to quarter distance: an interval of a company is reserved betwixt each regiment, and the divisions when closed resume the ordinary march.

FORM CLOSE COLUMN. HALT.	{ When arrived within about 200 yards of where the line is to be formed, the head is halted, and the rear divisions move on to close column.
REGIMENT COLUMNS WILL DEPLOY ON THE 3d REGIMENT.	{ The 3d or any other regiment is then named as the one which is to give the ground on the line, and points in it are already marked out by the advanced adjutants.
OUTWARDS FACE.	{ The 3d reg. stands fast, each other one in mass Faces to its proper hand.
Q. MARCH.	{ Each marches quick to the flank without opening out.
MARCH. HALT, DRESS.	{ When the 3d reg. is uncovered, it marches forward to its place in line, and halts at its given points.
HALT, FRONT. DRESS. MARCH. HALT, DRESS.	{ The regiments that are marching to the flanks, as soon as they have acquired an interval of one company and a half from each other, will successively Halt, Front, Dress.....March.....Halt, Dress, with the 3d regiment which is now on the line. Music, drummers, &c. are in the rear of each regiment column; and also artillery, unless otherwise placed.
FORM GRAND DIVISIONS.	{ The regiments being thus placed on the line with the above intervals, and in columns of companies, are ordered to form column of two companies in front, as in § 147.
THE LINE WILL BE FORMED ON THE 3d DI- VISION OF THE 3d REGIMENT.	{ The line being now prolonged to both flanks, a Caution is given that the whole will deploy on any named division of any one regiment: for example, on the 3d division of the 3d regiment.

OUTWARDS
FACE.

{ The two right regiments, and the front divisions of the 3d Face, to the right, and all the rest to the left.

Q. MARCH.

{ The whole March quick to the flanks, except the named division, which advances into the alignement, and the rest of the 3d regiment proceeds to make a central formation on it. § 150.

..... DIVISION,
HALT, FRONT.

{ The other regiments continue their march till each arrives at the point where its inward flank is to be placed; and when each does so, such flank divisions, whether it is the front or rear one, Halts, Fronts, and occupies its place in line, while the other divisions proceed and make their deployment upon it.—In this manner the regiments successively deploy, § 148, 149. observing the general attentions already given.

2. The points of marching and forming upon must be well defined : The head divisions of regiments that move along the line must do it accurately, and by no means get before it : The files must march correct, and the beginning of the deployment of each regiment must be well timed, otherwise the general line will be ill taken up.—The general line is that on which the regiment stood before the deployment begun, and the several adjutants will carefully and quickly prolong it, each giving a point near to where the outward flank of his own regiment will extend.

3. The regiment columns FACE, and separate form the general column by a command given for the whole by the chief ; but each column is halted, fronted and brought up into line by its respective commanding officer.—In like manner when the several columns are on their line of formation, they will FACE and MARCH

by word of command from the chief; but each will be ordered to **DEPLOY** at the proper place by its own commanding officer.

4. When several regiment close columns stand arranged along side of each other, and are in concert to deploy into line. The named one of formation only can be required to form, either on the front, a **CENTRAL**, or the rear division; but each of the others necessarily form, either on its front, or on its rear one, as the circumstances of situation demand.

5. After the column of march has closed up to quarter distance, the leading regiment may, when thought proper, be at once directed to its point of halting; and the others may successively diverge from the column, arrange themselves as before along-side of it, and double up to columns of 2 companies.—The line of regiments in mass being thus formed, at such a distance from the position it is to extend on, as circumstances point out, may from thence advance on a front 1-5th of its extended one (as the several regiment columns are now 5 divisions in depth), and may then deploy into line, as near to the enemy as appears safe.—In such state of deployment the troops have not much to apprehend, as they are in a situation to resist any sudden attack; nor until they do begin to deploy, can the enemy provide against, or determine what position they will take up, as 4-5ths of their number may be thrown to either hand, and as an oblique direction may readily be given by the previous placing of the several regiment columns in such intended direction, which is an easy operation.

§ 188.....*Oblique Deployments.*

Oblique
deploy-
ment.

The deployment of the close column into a line **OBLIQUE** to the one on which its head then stands, may in some situations be required where circumstances

do not permit of the previous operation of placing the column perpendicular to such line; as when a wing is to be lengthened out but refused, or an enemy's flank to be gained by throwing forward one or more regiments which have advanced in close column behind the point of a wing; or when the nature of the ground on which the column stands demands a deployment that will give a support to a flank, or preserve the advantage of a position. Fig. 12.

Such deployments must be made by the troops as standing in one column, and by the whole as if one regiment, according to the mode prescribed for it; they do not apply to regiments separated and standing in mass on the same line. If more than one or two regiments take up an oblique line, it will require great attention in the commanders to preserve order, and to form with justness.—Such formations are required on the front division of the column; hardly on the rear or on a central one, the attendant difficulties are sufficiently obvious: The column must be well closed up, and two companies in front.—Whenever circumstances permit the column to be placed perpendicular to its line of formation it must always be done: oblique formations are unavoidable exceptions.

§ 189.....*If a Regiment close Column of Companies should be required to form the Square.*

The column being halted with the usual interval of one pace between the companies, receives the cautionary command to FORM THE SQUARE, on which the front half of the companies in the column take one pace forward; the first company then falls back to the second one pace, and the 2 last companies close up 1 and 2 paces to the company before them. The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their centre, Fig. 80.
B.

by their sub-divisions taking each one pace to the flanks ; 2 officers with their serjeants place themselves on each of the front and rear intervals ; 2 officers with their serjeants also take post in each of the encreased intervals in the centre of the sides ; and a serjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the first division, and of each flank rear rank man of the last division ; all the other officers, serjeants, displaced men, drummers, &c. &c. assemble behind the centre of the companies which are to form the flank faces.— On the word *OUTWARDS FACE*, the two rear companies face outwards, and 4 files (supposing the companies of 12 files each) on each flank of all the companies (except the first and last) also face outwards, the whole lining with the flanks of the front companies, and dressing in ranks from front to rear. At the word *Q. MARCH*, the 5th file from each flank of all the companies except the 2 first and 2 last, followed by the front rank man of the 6th file, move up to right and left, and respectively fill up the intervals between the flanks of their own and the preceding division ; the remainder of the men of the side divisions arrange themselves to their right and left, forming close in the rear of their own divisions respectively. The whole thus stand faced outwards, and formed at least 4 deep, with two officers and their serjeants in the middle of each face to command ; all the other officers, as well as serjeants, &c. &c. are in the void space in the centre behind their companies ; and the files of the officers in the faces may be completed by serjeants, &c. &c. from the interior, in such manner as the commandant may direct. The mounted field officers must pass into the centre of the column, by the rear face, if necessary, opening from its centre 2 paces, and again closing in. When ordered, the 2 first ranks all around the column will kneel and slope their bayonets ; the 2 next ranks will fire standing, and all the others will remain in reserve ; the

file coverers behind each officer of the sides will give back and enable him to stand in the 3d rank. Whatever is the strength of the companies which compose the flank sides, the whole of them will face outwards except their 4 centre files, which are always reserved for filling up the intervals.

To reduce the square..... On the word FORM CLOSE COLUMN, the files that faced outward will come to their proper front, and the files that moved into the intervals will face about. At the word Q. MARCH, the grenadiers take one pace forward, and the two rear companies take one and two paces forward, and then face about; the files from the intervals take their proper places; officers, serjeants, &c. will quit the interior, move to their several stations, and the companies that composed the flank faces will be completed; the companies will also close inwards by sub-divisions one pace.

§ 190.....*When several close Columns are formed from Parts of the same Line.*

The parts of the line which are to compose each column are named; each regiment forms a close column on one of its own named divisions: The several regiment close columns march by a flank, and place themselves before or behind the directing regiment of that general column to which they are to belong.

§ 191.....*If several considerable close Columns are halted at accidental Distances, but with their Heads dressed, and are ordered to form in one Line.*

At whatever distance the heads of the close columns are halted from each other, the separate regi-

ments will move up into line, each column upon its own named regiment : The point and division on which the whole are to form will be named : The whole will extend from it : The distances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, so that the outward regiments may move successively as it becomes necessary to preserve their distances from the inward ones—Or, the adjutants taking their points from the given one of *appui*, the columns will in the mean time be previously so placed as not to cross or interfere in the march ; the regiments of each will then disengage, march, enter, and form on the line.

§ 192.....*If two Columns halted at open, half, or quarter Distance are to exchange Places.*

The divisions of each will face inwards and file ; when they have nearly approached each other, one of them halts, the other continues in march, and passes through the intervals of the halted one.—Both columns then move on until they arrive, halt, and front on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preserved for them : during this flank march, the head of the files are kept nearly dressed, and are regulated in each column by the 2 leading divisions. This operation is necessary when a line is to be taken up and formed on facing the reverse way to what the columns then do ; and if such line is in the rear of the columns they also countermarch their divisions by files, in order to enter and prolong it. ~~This~~ mode of columns exchanging situation, which is equivalent to the passage of lines, may be required on several occasions.

§ 193....*When two Columns are to form in Line in any given Position.*

*Points are prepared.....*The columns, by marching, countermarching, exchange of situation by files, or by whatever other operation is necessary, are brought up with their heads to the given points in the new line ; the columns close up ; the regiments disengage, place themselves on the new line ; the division or divisions of formation are named, and the whole relatively deploy into line.....Or, points being prepared by the several adjutants, the regiments will disengage at a due distance, march on their respective points, and form in line.

§ 194.....*If there are two Columns, composed each of Parts of two Lines, which are to form.*

The regiments of the second line will halt at a proper distance from the first, and deploy or form in line in the same manner as the first one does.....Or, if the first line is to form facing to the rear, the second one will have to proceed and to pass it, in order to arrive at its relative situation.

If two lines march off to the front in 2, 3, or 4 columns, each composed of part of the two lines ; advance at certain distances from each other to where their heads enter on 2 given parallel lines ; wheel their heads to a flank into, and prolong those lines to any extent : Then, as the columns of each line have of course joined each other, the whole will be moving in two columns of lines, ready to form by a wheel-up to the flanks, when the object of the movement is accomplished, which probably may be that of out-flanking, or turning the flank of an enemy.

If two lines, marching in columns of lines to a flank, are unexpectedly obliged to make front to that flank, then the new lines will be composed each of part of the old ones, by forming up to right and left.

ECHELLON

MOVEMENTS OF THE LINE.

Echellon
move-
ments of a
great
corps.

1. The ECHELLON movements of a great corps place it in an advantageous situation to disconcert an enemy, to make a partial attack, or a gradual retreat. Different previous manœuvres must always have diverted the attention of an enemy, and prevented him from being certain of where the attack is to be made. It may be formed from the centre, or from either of the wings reinforced: If successful the divisions move up into line to improve the advantage: If repulsed they are in a good situation to protect the retreat. In advancing, the several bodies move independent, act freely, and are ready to assist: In retiring they fall gradually back on each other, and thereby give mutual aid and support.

Strength
of Echel-
lons.

2. The Echellons of a line are according to its strength, of one, two, or three regiments each..... Though their flanks seem multiplied they are not exposed, as they cover each other; and if they are far asunder they may be protected by artillery and cavalry relatively posted.

Oblique
march.

3. Echellons seen at a distance appear as if a full line: being short and independent lines they can the easier march obliquely to out-wing an enemy, or to preserve the points of appui to a wing; and such movement may not be perceptible to an enemy.

Echellon
formed on
any divi-
sion.

4. The Echellon may be formed direct from line, on a flank or any central division, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

Partial
forma-
tions in
Echellon.

5. The whole or only part of the line may be thrown into Echellon and that either to the front or rear. In the first case, with a view to gain the flank

of an enemy, or obtain a cross fire ; in the second to refuse or cover one's own flank.

6. When the Echellon is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank or division regulates all its movements ; when attached to a line, it must depend on the motions of that line. Directing point.

7. The same general principles of movement and formation apply to all Echellons similarly formed, however great or small they may be, and whether they are acting to the front or the rear.

8. Echellons of battalions or less move forward by their directing flank, which is always the one advanced from, or wheeled to. Echellons of regiments move by their advanced serjeants. Echellons of several regiments move in line each by its own centre, and the whole by the regiment next the directing flank. General directing points of great Echellons in movement.

9. By at any time halting the Echellon the leading division may be changed, and instead of one flank the other may be made the advanced one : Or, instead of an Echellon formed from a flank, it may be converted into an Echellon formed from the centre : this is effected upon any named division, by the relative and perpendicular movements of the other to front or rear. In this operation when the Echellon is a direct one, the divisions of it will exactly pass each other's flank : when it is an oblique one, which has been formed by wheeling, a part of each in passing will necessarily be intersected by the one preceding it, and must therefore double in passing, and afterwards extend into its proper place. Change of directing flanks, or divisions of the Echellon.

§195.....*When a considerable Line changes to an Oblique Position by the Echellon March of Companies.*

1. *If the new line intersects any part of the old line.....*The regiment so intersected will make its

Fig. 59.

change of position on that fixed point flank or central (§ 159, 161.); and all the others will march in Echellon whether forward or backward to their respective points in the new line, before they successively begin to form in it. (§ 162.)

2. *If the new line intersects the prolongation of the old line.....* A point will be given in the new line where the leading flank is to be placed. The leading division will be wheeled so that it may move perpendicular on that point, and all the other divisions of the line will wheel up the same number of paces: the whole will march up in Echellon regarding their leading flank as a movable centre, and as each regiment arrives at the new line it will halt, and form in it by a new interior arrangement. (§ 157.)

In these changes of position, the whole Echellons of a line are situated, and may be considered relatively the same as the platoons or echellons of a regiment; the whole move together and connected at the ordinary step; each regiment arrives successively at its point in the new line, and each as soon as it arrives begins its formation on it.....So that whether it is the regiment or a line which so changes, the march is made with precision, and each Echellon forms up in succession.

§ 196.....*When the Line marches obliquely outwards in Echellon of Companies, and changes Position inwards to Move upon a Flank which it has gained.*

The line formed and halted marches to the flank in Echellon of companies (§ 155.) forms in line parallel to the one it quitted (§ 156.) and if it then instantly makes an oblique change of position, (§ 159.) it will be placed in a situation to march forward with the greatest advantage on the weak point of the ene-

my. Or, according to the distance from the point of attack ; the line after resuming its parallel situation may move forward a given space, then make its oblique change of situation, and again march on in the new direction it has acquired, on the enemy's flank.

¶ 197.....*When from Line parallel to an Enemy, considerable Echellons advance from a Flank to the Front.*

The divisions of the line and the distance of Echellons being announced ; the flank Echellon moves on ; when it has taken the given number of paces, the next one follows, and thus successively till the whole is in motion ; the whole halt, when the leading Echellon halts.

1. Two under officers from each following Echellon will march in the line of each preceding one, so as to stop (when the preceding one does) in its just prolongation, and at the point at which the inward flank and centre of the following one is to be halted when it is required to move up into line, and whose position in such line must be thereby easily and accurately determined. If the Echellon is composed of more than one regiment, the others, when such detached under officers stop, will send forward to mark also their several centres in the prolonged line.

2. It depends alone on the conductor of the leading Echellon when it halts, to give it such a direction that its prolongation shall pass before the enemy's front ; and if the others are to move up into line, and are then within reach of the enemy's fire, it is evident how much care each must take, not to throw forward its outward flank, and be thereby exposed to an infilade.

3. Notwithstanding every measure taken to obtain exact parallel lines, the following Echellons must, and

on the march will be guided by and conform to the leading one ; their great object is to preserve in moving on, their parallel and relative situations, their ordered distances, and proper flank interval : In this they are to act in the same manner as when advancing in line, and having the leading Echellon to guide them, together with the assistance of the mounted officers who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward ; they will execute with justness, this important manœuvre. The preservation of intervals is also as essential an attention, as in the attack in line.

4. *When large Echellons* having marched forward are to wheel up to their advanced flank, and form in line oblique to the one from which they departed. The outward flanks which are to be the standing ones, must be halted as soon as each touches the line on which the formation is to be made : and for this purpose a line must be ready marked by advanced officers (prolonged from the leading Echellon) on which such flank is to halt, and on no account to pass it. Each Echellon forms in line by a change of position on that flank : but if there is not a previous arrangement of distances, and a degree of doubling of each in proportion to the intended obliquity of the line, there will be increased intervals between the Echellons.

§ 198.....*When a Line formed on, and beyond an Enemy's flank, moves to the Attack in great Echellons.*

The Echellon which is then placed perpendicular to the point of the enemy's flank will move on, the rest will successively follow it, from each hand, and their prescribed distance ; the Echellon on one flank

will be refused, and on the other they will advance beyond the leading one to envelope the enemy.

From whatever situation of Echellons a body is placed in ; a CHANGE in those Echellons may be instantly produced, by altering the leading one, and all the others immediately taking new relative positions to conform to it.

§ 199....*When a Line formed in front of, and obliquely to the Enemy, is to move forward from a flank to the Attack in great Echellons parallel to the Enemy.*

The number of Echellons and strength of each being ascertained and announced, the Echellons will naturally be formed to and led by the advanced flank. As the oblique Echellons of a regiment are formed by the wheels of each company ; so the oblique Echellons of a line are formed by wheeling up the 8th file of each flank company of each Echellon a given number of paces, and then correctly dressing the company to it : the other companies of the regiment or body which compose the Echellon, wheel each their 8th file half that number of paces, dress up to it, and the whole march and successively line upon the prolongation of the given one, proceeding as in the Echellon change of position of one or more regiments on a fixed flank. (§ 159.) Great pains must be taken in the correct placing of the flank directing division of each Echellon.

1. It must be observed that when the *Echellons* have been formed from the *oblique* line, so as to stand parallel to the enemy's front, they will be doubled behind each other in proportion to the degree of wheel made, and that were they to move directly forward to form in line with the leading one a portion of each would be thereby cut off, and the general extent of the line reduced,—To endeavor by obliquing in the

course of marching to rectify this defect, would be very difficult, and is hardly to be attempted: It must be remedied either by an early attention to taking the necessary and greater intervals than usual before forming the oblique line: or, before the whole advances, making the Echellons take ground to the flanks, and place themselves in their proper relative situations, as they would be when formed from parallel line: This done the whole may move on, either from the advanced or retired flank, and when proper, march up into parallel line: Should this not be done, part of each Echellon would of course be excluded on forming the general line, and must remain behind it. The line may also be formed (provided the front Echellon halts in a situation that will allow it); by each other one at that instant making such a change of direction backward on its regulating flank, as will allow it to march perpendicularly forward to its proper point in the new line, where by another change of direction forward it will take up the prolongation of the leading Echellon.

2. Whether the original line is formed *parallel* or *oblique* to the enemy's front, the Echellons before marching are always to be placed perpendicular to the line on which they are to move. From this situation a diagonal march on the enemy's flank may be made, and in such case large Echellons must be broke into companies; but it is an operation difficult in the execution, that would require much circumspection, and if attempted too near would be very dangerous, as the flank thrown up is much exposed to the enemy's enfilade.

3. This ATTACK can be at once formed from a column of march, or the open column of a line, which is prolonging a direction upon, and oblique to that of the enemy. The column will halt, wheel into line, and without any sensible pause the leading flank of each Echellon will wheel up parallel to the enemy,

the other divisions of the line will each wheel the half of that space, and move on into their several Echellons, the whole will then be ready to advance led by any named Echellon.

The ATTACKS of considerable bodies are almost always conducted on the principles of the ECHELLON; there are few situations where the whole could act at the same time, or where it would be prudent or eligible so to do: they are therefore made by fractions of a line well supported and reinforced.

§ 200.....*With respect to the Enemy, and the intended Movement; the ECHELLON position may be taken from the Parallel, Oblique, or Column Position.*

1. *If from the line Parallel to the enemy.*—It is previously divided into the several Echellons which are to compose it; and the distance at which they are to remain behind each other is announced.—The reinforced flank or centre which is to attack is then ordered to advance; each Echellon of 2 or more regiments moves on when the preceding one has gained the ordered distance of (perhaps 100) paces, and thus being regulated by the head, acts according to the event of the attack.

2. *If from the line Oblique to the enemy....* This position having been taken from the column of march, or in the course of advancing in line; and the divisions of the Echellons being ascertained; they are formed by wheeling up parallel to the enemy and to each other: The advanced or retired wing reinforced may then proceed to the attack, and supported by the others will act according to circumstances.... One may attack upon any degree of obliquity, and by absolutely refusing one wing, place it in a situation the more readily to protect a retreat should it be necessa-

ry, and which will be greatly strengthened if a point of appui can be given to such refused wing.

3. *If from columns halted perpendicular or nearly so to the enemy.....* Their heads are halted at given relative points, and given distances; the attacking bodies form in one or more lines; the others extend to the flank in Echellon, being separated perpendicularly a space equal to the distances they halted at in their several columns: This space is augmented if necessary when the whole move on, and lines of two or more regiments each are thus formed: From the Echellon position by flank marching the order of column may again be resumed.

4. *The advanced Echellon* being arrived at its object, the attack begins, and the others attend the event.—If it succeeds they move up into line to perfect it.—If it fails, each falling back on each, is strengthened and supported every instant of the retreat; this will generally be done by the Echellons in the course of retiring, at the same time making a gradual wheel backwards on the posted flank of the corps, from which the fire of artillery will much check and enfilade an advancing enemy.

5. *The second line* when there is one, follows in every thing the Echellon movements of the first.—The regiments make the same degree of wheel, preserve the same relative position, and serve as a support to the first; the attack of the second line moves on therefore at the same time with that which it is to support.—The Echellons of one or more lines are generally retired from 100 to 150 paces, each behind the one preceding of its own line.—When necessary the Echellons of the first line may retire thro' those of the second and be relieved in the attack.

6. *Where a line is passing a defile to the front, and from or near its centre.*—After passing it may first form at the head of the defile, in the Echellon position; the

several divisions are then ready to move up into line, or by wheels towards the flanks to form in oblique lines, and protect those flanks.—It may also in the same manner pass a defile to the rear retiring from the flanks by Echellon, while the centre protects the movement.

7. *When the line has to advance a considerable distance in front*, it may occasionally be done with much convenience in a degree of Echellon position, by each regiment being retired 5 or 6 paces or more behind its preceding one.—The regiment of direction is the leading one, which must march with the greatest exactness, and when so ordered, the whole can in an instant move up into line.

8. *A line B, formed parallel or oblique to the enemy* Fig. 85.
E, threatens and commences an Echellon movement from its left; but on the arrival of the left at a favorable point of appui C, the whole halt, and an Echellon attack from the right (which has been strengthened) then begins; this attack, D, having been supported as long as is proper and having failed, the whole fall back in Echellon F, on the left which remains posted.—From this situation an oblique line G, is taken to the left and from the left, by each adjutant marking his own right in the prolonged line: the regiments successively again retire, and then break into column the left in front, march behind each other, enter at their adjutants, and take up the new line.—This position G, may be quitted by throwing back the left of the line; retiring by alternate lines; or in any other manner as circumstances may require.

MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT.

General intentions.

1. The chief object of every other movement is the quick and just formation into line when necessary, and the consequent advance of that line in front towards the enemy.——If the correct march of a single regiment requires so much attention and precision, it is evident that these must be redoubled to procure the just movement of a line, which is the operation that immediately leads to the enemy, and is the most difficult, and material of all manœuvres.——To hurry and bring up troops to the attack in imperfect order is to lose every advantage which discipline proposes, and to present them to the enemy in that very state, to which after his best efforts he has hoped to reduce them.

2. The same principles that direct the march of the regiment direct that of the line ; and in proportion as difficulties increase, must attention be given.

General pace.

3. The march of a considerable body in line can only be at the ordinary step, a quicker movement would produce disorder, nor could artillery well attend its motions when advancing to the enemy : But there are situations, where a brigade or smaller front should move on to a particular object or to an attack at a lengthy step, or where even a quicker cadence may be required from them.

§ 201.....*When the line is to march in Front.*

One of the regiments is *named* as the regulating one, to whose movements all the rest are to conform.—The *Commander* of the line is himself with that regiment, every precaution as already prescribed is taken to ensure its perpendicular march, and its directing serjeants are ordered to advance.

THE LINE WILL
ADVANCE.

At a *Caution* quickly circulated, that THE LINE WILL ADVANCE, the directing serjeants of each other regiment, move out their 6 paces; it is almost impossible that they should not halt in perfect line; but if any small alteration is necessary, the serjeants on either side of the regulating one, being from that last, ordered to move forward or backward as much as appears necessary for this correction, will, together with the regulating one, give a line to which all the others will immediately conform.

The *directors* of the march being thus placed parallel to the line, must take care that their bodies are perfectly square to the front, and they will again remark their near points of march, for they must not look out for distant ones, but take such as accidentally occur on the ground.

Form the circumstances in which lines must generally be expected to move, as thick weather, smoke of cannon, dust, &c. &c. it is evident that *distant* objects of march cannot be looked for or taken, nor any other observed than such as are near, and derived from the eye and the squareness of the body moving upon them.

The *Commander* of each regiment is ten paces behind the rear rank, in the file of the directing serjeant, and will there remain; his adjutant is behind the flank next that of direction, and the major is behind the other flank. The commander of the line, or some person that he appoints, is near the directing serjeant of the regulating regiment, and with coolness and judgment may make such signal to the serjeant of a neighbouring regiment as will gradually bring him forward or backward, and by then being a direction to the others,

will tend to preserve the parallelism of the line ; but this correction is not to be attempted without great and gradual discretion, and so as not to occasion any considerable alteration to a flank of the line.

MARCH. { At the word MARCH given to the regiment of direction, and rapidly repeated, each regiment at the same instant is put in motion by its respective centre.

From the first moment of movement the quickest and greatest attention must be given by the commanding officer to observe whether the direction of the regulating regiment is just ; this will be seen in the course of 20 or 30 paces ; for, if the rest of the line is moving steadily, and that this regiment is closing to one flank, and opening to the other, its direction must be changed accordingly by advancing a shoulder ; but if the whole are steady, or that the regiment is not altering within itself, or with respect to the general line, its direction must be persevered in, and not afterwards changed. Till this circumstance is ascertained with respect to the directing one, and which must be immediately done, its contiguous regiments will make no alteration in their position.

The *Regulating* regiment must be regarded as infallible, the commander of the line watches over it, and, from the moment that its direction is ascertained, the commander of each other, and their directing sergeants, are to consider their movements as subordinate to it, and to conform accordingly : It is the helm which guides the line, and must not change cadence, nor will it lengthen or shorten its step, but from unavoidable necessity, and by particular order.

Should a regiment, from any partial reason, be behind or before the line.—It will receive the words STEP OUT, OR STEP SHORT, and when the line is regained the word ORDINARY.

In the course of marching should an *obstacle* break the centre of the regulating regiment, immediately before such operation takes place, one of the regiments near it must be named to the adjoining ones (but not necessarily to the rest of the line) as replacing it, and may continue to direct in future, or, at least, till the colours of the former one have, after passing the obstacle, again regained their true position in the original direction, and which, by the operation of detached persons, must have been truly found and traced for them.

§ 202.....*When the Line is to Dress.*

If the *Commander* gives the word *DRESS*, it is immediately to commence from the centre of each regiment, the men looking to their own colours, and the correcting officers lining them upon the colours of their next adjoining regiment; the platoon officer on the left of the colours performs this operation for the left wing by placing his own platoon in the direction of the colour to his left; and the officer on the left of the right wing (or if there is none such the centre directing serjeant) performs this for the right wing, by placing the platoon beyond him in a line with the next right colour: this done without delay, and without too much nicety, the wings of each regiment immediately conform to their two placed platoons, towards whom they are then looking.

By this means, when a single regiment halts, it is dressed on its right centre company, and is therefore in a straight line. Two regiments thus dressing from their several centres on each other's colours, and their outward wings conforming, must therefore be in a straight line. When 3 or more regiments thus dress from the centre of each on its next colour, if all the colours happen to have halted in a line, the general line will

be straight; but if they have halted irregularly, then the positions of the line between each 2 colours will be straight, and no flank will be exposed, which is giving it the best firing situation that dispatch and circumstances may allow.—In this operation the two centre dressers of each regiment must be very alert.

But if the commander finds it necessary to give a more exact *dressing*, he immediately orders the first colour of one of the adjoining regiments to move out two or three paces, to be planted upright, and the bearer to FACE towards him.—He then himself advances a pace or two, and plants the colour of the regulating regiment, so that the line of the two prolonged shall occasion as little change as possible at the distant flanks, consistent with his views; the colours and flank officers of the other regiments instantly move into that line, all the colours facing to the regulating regiment, and the flank officers to their own colours. So many fixed points being thus ascertained, the platoon officers are immediately ordered to cover in it, facing to their own colour, and the men of each regiment to move up, as prescribed for the single regiment. The advantage that arises, if platoon officers can at once take their covering and distances from the left, has been already mentioned.

The line may also be correctly dressed, by one colour of a regiment near the directing one advancing a few paces; one colour of the directing regiment is then placed in the intended line; a colour from each other regiment immediately prolongs this line. The grand divisions of each regiment are then successively dressed from their own colour upon the adjoining one.

§ 203.....*When the Line is to retire.*

When the line is to retire, the necessity of its being previously correctly dressed is full as essential as

when it is to advance ; if that preliminary is not taken care of, its movements must be disordered in proportion to its extent. The several regiments will prepare for the retreat in the manner prescribed for the single one, by receiving the the caution that the *line will retire*, and then by *facing* to the *right about*.

THE LINE
WILL
RETIRE.

But, as there may not always be time to give it the wished-for degree of exactness, before the *Retreat* begins, such aids may be applied as will greatly assist it in the course of its movement. On the caution that the LINE WILL RETIRE, the directing serjeants, &c. move to the rear six paces, taking their several directions as already prescribed, one of the colours next the regulating regiment will be considered as a fixed point, the colour of the regulating regiment will then be placed, so that the prolongation of the line which unites the two shall give the required front of the march ; the other advanced serjeants and colours, without regard to distance from their respective regiments, will place themselves on this line. The line then

R. ABOUT
FACE.
MARCH.

FACES to the RIGHT about. At the word MARCH, the whole move on, the advanced serjeants preserving their position and line, and the regiments by degrees acquire their just distance of 6 paces from them.

When the *line*, is moving to the front, *halts* and renews its march, without any previous dressing, the same method may, without delay, be employed to regulate its advanced serjeants, before the word MARCH is given.

HALT, FRONT.

When the Line is to front, each regiment receives the word HALT..... FRONT, and immediately faces about; if it is then to move forward, the colours and serjeants are ordered to advance before the front rank, and are there correctly lined, ready to conduct its march. But if it is to remain halted, the dressing is then ordered in the manner already prescribed.

1. Although no *Caution* should ever be given before the HALT of the single regiment, yet it might sometimes help to assist that of the line, if there was not a danger that, in permitting it, the march of the line would be habitually made with less accuracy, trusting to this correction, than if an instant *halt* was always to be expected; for, this ought to be required of a line of any given extent; and experience has shewn that it is to be attained when made with great attention, and on just principles.

2. *Echellons* of attack have generally a considerable front, as of three or four regiments, and equal to that, of the part of the body, against which they are directed. But was a *Line*, in order to render its movement easier, to advance up to an enemy's line in echelon of regiment, retired five or six paces behind each other, although perhaps the intervals might be taken with sufficient correctness, yet in such situation flanks would be liable to be thrown up, the general line not so well attained, and the regiments as they halted would be exposed to an oblique, as well as direct fire, till the others came up. The first part of a movement in front may be made in *Echelon* of regiments, but the *Line* should be completed before the last steps of it approach near to an enemy; for, nothing can then supply the place of, or be depended on, but the accurate *March* in *Line*, acquired from attentive habit, and just training.

§ 204.....*When a considerable Line has to pass a Bridge or Defile.*

1. It will proceed in the manner prescribed for (and as if it was) a single regiment, in passing to front or rear. Line passing defiles.

2. When there are several bridges or defiles to be at once passed, the line will be divided into relative portions, each composing a passing column.

3. When such movement are performed in presence of an enemy, the safety and protection of them by artillery and posted troops is a matter of previous disposition.

4. As the lines of infantry are generally formed not nearer than 12 or 1500 paces from an enemy's position, unless peculiar circumstances of ground favor a closer approach, there will often therefore be such obstacles to moving on, besides the partial ones occurring to parts of regiments, as may oblige large portions of the line to be again broken. Advancing lines.

5. Where defiles are to be passed in approaching the position of an enemy, the mouths of them must be strongly occupied; the columns of march must pass on the greatest front they will allow of, be previously arranged, well closed up, and ready to deploy in an instant. Columns of march

6. When in presence of an enemy, a retiring line is to break, and to pass defiles in one or more columns, much steadiness and disposition is required.....The line approaches near to the defiles before it fronts; the object is to pass quick, but without disorder; commanding grounds are previously occupied, and flanks are covered; if bridges are to be passed, protecting artillery will be placed on the other side. Retiring lines.

§ 205.....*When the Line advances or retires by Battalions, and fires.*

1. *If the line is in march and advancing.....*On the order from the officers commanding the line, the left wings HALT, and the right ones continue to march 15 paces, at which instant the word MARCH being given to the left wings, the right at the same time are ordered to HALT, FIRE, and load, during which the left march on and pass them, till the right wings, being loaded and shouldered, receive the word MARCH, on which the left ones HALT, FIRE, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.

2. *If the line is in march and retiring.....*The right wings are ordered to halt front, and when the left ones have gained 15 paces, and receive the word halt front, the right wings are instantly ordered to fire, load, face about, and march 15 paces beyond the left ones, where they receive the word halt front, on which the left wings FIRE, &c. and thus alternately proceed.

§ 206.....*Firing in Line.*

Object of
fire.

1. The chief object of fire against cavalry is to keep them at a distance, and to deter them from the attack ; as their movements are rapid, a reserve is always kept up. But when fire commences against infantry, it cannot (consistent with order, and other circumstances) be too heavy or too quick while it lasts, and till the enemy is beaten or repulsed.

2. The fire of 3 ranks standing is hardly, with our present arms to be required, especially if the ground should be broken, and that the soldiers are loaded with their knapsacks.

3. Where infantry are posted on heights that are to be defended by the fire of musquetry, the front rank will kneel, that one third of the fire that may be given should not be lost, for otherwise the rear rank in such situation could not sufficiently incline their pieces to raise the slope. As soldiers generally present too high, and as fire is of the greatest consequence to troops that are on the defensive, and who are posted if possible on commanding grounds, the habitual mode of firing should therefore be rather at a low level than a high one; and the fire of the front rank kneeling, being the most efficacious as being the most raising,—should not be dispensed with when it can be safely and usefully employed.

Defensive
fire.

4. When infantry marches in line to attack an enemy, and in advancing makes use of its fire; it is perhaps better to fire the 2 first ranks only standing, reserving the third, then to make the front rank kneel and to fire the whole; but volleys fired a considerable distance, or on a retiring enemy, may be given by the three ranks, the front one kneeling.

In line and
advancing

5. A line posted, or arriving at a fixed situation, will fire by *platoons*, each regiment independent, and such firing generally commencing from the centre of each. The first fire of each regiment will be regular, and establish intervals; after the first fire each platoon shall continue to fire as soon as it is loaded, independent and as quick as it can, till the regiment or line is ordered to cease.

Platoon
firing.

6. Behind a parapet, hedge, or abbatis, the two first ranks only can fire, and such fire may be *file firing*, deliberate and cool, the two men of the same file always firing together: It may begin from the right or left of platoons, and should be taught in situations adapted to it, not in open ground. Should the parapet, hedge, or abbatis, be but little raised, platoon firing may be used.

File fir-
ing.

Oblique
firing.

7. *Oblique firing* by regiments is advantageous on many occasions, as when it is proper, or that time does not allow to give an oblique direction to part of a line, or that their fire can in this manner be thrown against the opening of a defile, the flanks of a column or against cavalry or infantry that direct their attack on some particular regiment or portion of the line.

Regularity
of firing.

8. As long as the fire by regiments, battalion, or companies, can be kept up regular, it is highly advantageous and can be at any time stopped; but should file-firing be allowed, and once begun, unless troops are exceeding cool and well disciplined, it will be difficult to make it finish, and to make them advance in order.

9. When a line halts at its points of firing no time is to be lost in scrupulous dressing, and the firing is instantly to commence. But a line that halts and is not to fire, or when its firing ceases after the halt, may immediately be ordered to dress from colours to colours.

10. The attention of the officers and non-commissioned officers of the rear to the locking up of the ranks in firing cannot be too often repeated.

§ 207....*When the Square or Oblong is composed of more than one Regiment.*

Fig. 81.
B.

1. Two regiments may form column of companies, each behind its inward flank one, and close the interval between them. The oblong when formed will be six deep, if the companies are at half distance and wheel outwards by sub-divisions, except the 2 first and 2 last which close and face outwards: The grenadier and light companies may be considered as making no part of the oblong, but be applied according to circumstances.

2. If a greater degree of space is required in the interior of the figure, the side columns will be of subdivisions, and formed behind the 2d or 3d company from the inward flank; a proportional number of the last companies will compose the rear face; the oblong when formed will be 3 deep, and the grenadier and light companies will be in the interior, to be applied as is found necessary.

3. *If 3 or more regiments are to form a square or oblong.....* It depends on circumstances what part of the line, whether flank or centre, composes the front face, but the line is sub-divided accordingly, and the parts of it protecting each other in the movement, march in echelon or column to take up their different situations. The flank faces when the square marches will move in columns of sub-divisions..... *When the square is halted*, the 2 flank sub-divisions of each face wheel back the quarter circle, and obtain a cross fire at the angles: The grenadier and light companies are ready to reinforce any particular part. *When the retiring square* has arrived at a point where it can diminish in safety, the rear face may halt and front inwards; the side faces continue their march in column, and their heads if necessary unite; the front face, halts fronts, when it arrives at the rear face; that face then retires in 2 columns, followed by the front face, which in this operation is protected by such posted companies as make the rear of the whole. *If the retiring square* arrives at a favorable position, as a wood, heights, &c. which it is to occupy, the flank faces extend along it in columns of sub-division, protected by the other 2 faces, which afterwards take up their own ground..... These operations being supposed of necessity, will invert parts of the line, which must be afterwards remedied as opportunity offers.

4. *The square or oblong* is a shape which infantry have at all times taken, when obliged in open ground

Fig. 80.
C.
Fig. 81.
C.

to march in the face of cavalry.—Though the mode of placing one or two regiments in this manner may be prescribed, yet the various formations, of which a greater number are susceptible, depend on ground, the position of the troops, the movements of the enemy, &c. and must be made in consequence of the local orders of the commander; It is therefore from circumstances, and from the flexibility of the military order; that in an instant, he will determine into what shape the body which he conducts must be thrown. Should such bodies be at the same time liable to the united attacks of a very superior infantry or artillery; such situation would be critical indeed, and from which nothing but the most determined resistance could extricate them.

CHEQUERED RETREAT

OF THE LINE.

1. *All manœuvres of a Corps retiring*, are infinitely more difficult to be performed with order, than those in advancing.—They must be more or less accomplished by chequered movements; one body by its numbers or position, facing and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy presses hard, the whole must probably front in time and await him; as the ground narrows or favours, different parts of the corps must double; mouths of defiles and advantageous posts must be possessed; by degrees the different bodies must diminish their front, and throw themselves into column of march when it can be done with safety.

2. *The chequered retreat*, by the alternate regiments or battalions of a line going to the rear while

the others remain halted, cover them, and in their turn retire in the same manner, is the quickest mode of refusing a part of a corps to the enemy, and at the same time protecting its movement, as long as it continues to be made nearly parallel to the first position.

3. If six regiments are in line, the 2d division of the three even ones (2d 4th, 6th,) counting from the right will go to the right about, retire in line about 200 paces, and then halt front, having carefully preserved their intervals. The two outward regiments of the retiring ones will each, when it first faces about form a flank to its outward platoon. As soon as the second division begins to retreat, all the regiments of the first one will immediately throw back their wing platoons 1-8th of the circle, and thereby when necessary procure a cross fire in the intervals, and along the front. Fig. 86.

4. When the 2d division fronts, the first one moves up its flanks and is ordered to RETIRE through the intervals, and to form at an equal distance in the rear: As soon as the first division arrives near the second one; that second one begins to *fire* by platoons standing in the same manner as the first hath already done. The wing platoons of all the second division regiments, place themselves on the flank, as soon as the first division hath passed them, and remain so till their turn of retiring is again come.

5. *During the retreat* should favorable heights or situations present themselves to either of the divisions, they should be for the time occupied by the most contiguous regiments, who will halt, or incline as is necessary, without scrupulously adhering in that case to the alignement, or intervals; and any regiments that may happen to possess an advanced height, should throw their wings back, and aligne them on their neighbouring regiments, that they may be flanked by such regiments.

6. The retiring division will move by a directing regiment, and any faults in the halts of the line can easily and must be corrected, before the other division arrives at it.

7. The second retiring division having the intervals of the first to pass and to move on, as a guide, can have no difficulty in its movement or direction.

8. During the retreat should any of the flank platoons be ordered to preserve their flank position, such platoons will then march in file.

9. The operation is repeated till the commanding officer halts and fronts a retiring division in the intervals of a standing one.

10. *In the course of the chequered retreat, a position oblique to the original one may be taken up....* The division of the line which is to retire, after facing to the rear will immediately wheel up its platoon (.....) paces, according to the degree of obliquity which will be required for the line, it will then march on in this echelon position, and when ordered, form as before directed (§ 157.) to the leading regiment, and front: The other division of the line, when it is to retire, will perform the same movement, the regiments forming in their proper intervals, and completing the line as they severally arrive at it.—Or, the retiring division, after facing to the rear, will march on, till arrived at the distance where one flank is to be posted, it will there halt, and upon that flank instantly make a change of position by the Echelon march, and then front: The other division will then retire in the same manner, till it arrives at the posted one, and it will there instantly commence its change of position, take its place in the intervals, and front in full line.—From this situation the parallel retreat may continue to be made, or a new oblique direction be again required.

Fig. 86.
B.

11. In situations of retreat not very critical, the oblique position which the retiring division takes up, may be quickest and easiest gained by the filing of platoons.

12. *In the chequered retreat*, the following rules should be observed.—The regiments of the division nearest the enemy, will form flanks as soon as there is nothing in their front to cover them; but the other divisions will have no flanks except to the outward regiment of each. The regiments always pass by their proper intervals, and it is a rule in retiring, that the left of each shall always pass by the right of the neighbouring one.—Whatever advantages the ground offers are to be seized, without being too critically tied down to intervals, or to the determined distances of each retreat.—The division next the enemy must pass in front, through the intervals of the division immediately behind, and any regiment that finds it necessary must incline for that purpose.....The retiring division must step out, and take up no more time than what is necessary to avoid confusion.....The division nearest the enemy *fires* by platoons standing: the flanks of its regiments only fire when the enemy attempts to push through the intervals; when that division retires, it fires on skirmishers by men detached from its light company if present, or from platoons formed of rear rank men of one or two of the companies, and placed behind the flanks of the regiments. But should any of its regiments be obliged to halt and to fire, a shorter step must then be taken by the line; and should the enemy threaten to enter at any of its intervals, besides the fire of its flanks, such platoons of the line behind it, as can with safety, must give it support.

13. *If a line with reserves*, finds it necessary to retreat in face of an enemy.....The alternate regiments and the reserves will retire two or 300 paces, and then front. The other regiments will then retire: and

when they join the first, the reserves also will again march, and front at like distances, the reserves always leading the retreat.....This will continue, till it is proper or safe to break into column of march; the cannon and skirmishers of the whole, covering the front of the retiring line.

14. *Two full lines* will generally make their retreat by passing alternately through each other. Or, they may retire by the chequered movement of each line.

15. *If by the chequered movement*; and that the distance between the lines is 300 paces, each will give to its second division 150 paces for its retreat, and thus divide the distance.....When the second division of each line hath retired and fronted; the first division of the first line will retire through the intervals of its own second division; it will then when it arrives at the first division of the second line pass by files through the regiments of that division: and in the same manner will it pass through the intervals of the next division; and when 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt front, and wheel up into line.....The 2d division of the first line having prepared its flanks, begins to retire, as soon as its own first division hath passed the first of the second line: That second division will march through the intervals of that first; it will then proceed and pass by files through the regiments of the second division of the second line; it will continue in that shape, and pass through the intervals of its own first division, which is by this time re-formed, and when at its 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt front, and wheel up into line.....The divisions of the second line proceed in their turn exactly in the same manner.

PASSAGE OF LINES.

In narrow grounds, where there are redoubled lines, and in many other situations it becomes necessary for one regiment to pass directly through another, in marching either to front or rear. But this must particularly happen when a first line which has suffered in action, retires through, and makes place for a second line which has come forward to support it; or, the second line remaining posted, when the first falls back, and retires through it, and thus alternately, till a safe position is attained.

*Should the second line be ordered to advance, and occupy the ground which the first is to quit.....*As soon as it has approached within 20 paces, and halts, the *front line* regiments receive the word pass to the rear; each platoon is ordered to face to the right, and disengage its head: at the word march, each platoon moves off in file, at a quick step to the rear, and passes straight through the second line. The officers of the retiring line having been cautioned that they are again to form at 150, or 200 paces from the other line, and having begun to take and count them from the passing of that line, will accordingly be ordered to halt and front: the officers place themselves on the pivot flanks, take their just distances, and aligne to the front of the column, on the three or four first leading platoons, which will be instantly arranged in a true line by a mounted officer.

Passage of a first line, when the second line advances,

Fig. 87.
A.

Fig. 87.
B.

Wherever the heads of the retreating files present themselves, the officers of the second line cause four files of their platoons to fall back, and again to resume their places when the others have passed....During the march to the rear, the heads of files must preserve their accurate distances from the left, that when the column halts and fronts, it may immediately be in order to wheel up into line.

Passage
of a first
line,
when the
second
line is
posted.

If the second remain posted. The *first* retires in front, till within 20 paces of the second....At the word pass by files, each officer turns his platoon to the leftmarches quick in file through the second line, and halts fronts, at his determined number of paces from that line, by word of command. The pivots of the column are dressed, and the platoons wheel up into line.

Re-form-
ing the
first line
by a flank
regiment.

When a line of several regiments hath passed in this manner and fronted in column, it is necessary to dress their pivots correctly, before wheeling up into line.....The commander of the head regiment will instantly place the pivots of his three first platoons in a true direction, and order the officers of his other platoons to line on them, himself remaining with the head platoon as the point d'appui, will see that this is correctly done.....The first regiment thus steadied, will become a sufficient direction for the second, and every other one to prolong it by their adjutants; and this operation, though successive from platoon to platoon, and from regiment to regiment, may be performed quickly and correctly; if the adjutants are timeously detached, and if the head of the column is quickly arranged.

Re-form-
ing the
first line
on a cen-
tral regi-
ment.

Should it be thought proper to give it the *alignement from a central (c)*, rather than a flank regiment. —In this case, after halting and fronting, the platoon pivots of the given regiment are from its head accurately lined by its commander, in the true direction. — This regiment being placed, from which distances and dressing are taken, the others will intantly proceed to line their pivot flanks upon it: those that are behind it will readily do this; those that are before it will find more difficulty, as they must take their distances from the rear; to facilitate this, their platoon officers will face to the directing regiment, and will then successively take their distances and covering from their then front; as soon as each has acquired

Fig. 87.

his true position, he will face about, and make his platoon join to and dress to him.—The line will then be ready to form by wheeling up to the pivot flank.

Should a new position (D,) not parallel, be taken by the passing regiments..... The commander, with his two leading platoons, will first enter it, and direct the others to regulate their flanks by them; and if several regiments are passing the second line the NEW alignment is thus made easier for them. First line forms in an oblique position.

When a height (E,) in the rear is to be crowned by a retiring line..... Each officer must not dress exactly to the platoon that precedes him, but in joining it, he must *halt*, and arrange his own in such a manner, that the SLOPE of the rising can be entirely seen and commanded, which is here the great object, and would not be attained if the troops were to adhere to a straight line. Crowning a height

Fig. 87.

A line which hath passed, will often before forming, throw back a *wing*,....in order to occupy a particular position,.....to prevent the enemy's designs on that wing; or at least to make him take a greater detour to effect it; or, that he may be obliged to aligne his own on a height which is occupied, and from which he may be flanked.

When the movement is foreseen, and according to the wing which is to be refused, should the platoons of the line pass.....If the left is to be posted, and the right refused, the platoons may pass from their *left*, the column will thereby have its left in front, will be more readily directed on the point d'appui, and the preservation of distances will be facilitated, as they will then be taken from the front. If the right is to be posted, the platoons may pass from their right.

The line (A B), is here supposed to refuse its four right regiments (D), after having retired and passed as a column with its left in front..... All the regiments of the line to the left of the fourth, proceed as already Refusing a wing.

Fig. 88.

directed, and take up their line from the left or head regiment, which, in the course of the movement, is conducted to the point d'appui, where its head is to rest, and from whence the direction of formation is to be given : but the left of the fourth regiment becomes a new point d'appui, upon which the four regiments of the right are thrown back into any situation which the nature of the ground, and the views of the commander may require.

It may happen where the *passing* line is to *post* one flank, and *refuse* the other, that the officers will have their distances to take from behind ; the original remedy for this inconvenience has been shewn ; another also may be readily applied, which is to halt the whole, at any time after passing, and to countermarch each platoon, which will then cause the future formation to be taken from the front of the column.

A *retiring* line may also *refuse* a wing, by forming in line very soon after passing, and then taking up an oblique position to the rear, by the echelon march, or some other of the modes already prescribed.

OF SECOND LINES.

1. No considerable body should ever be formed, without a proportion of it being placed in *reserve* or in *second line*, and more or less strong, according to circumstances. The movements of such second line will always correspond to those of the first, and it will always preserve its parallelism, and distance. If the first line makes a flank, or central change of position, the second must make a change also on such point, as will bring it into its relative situation.

2. The march of the second line in front, is regulated by its own division or regiment of direction, which move relatively to that of the first line. In forming in line it will march upon its own points which are parallel to and ascertained in consequence of those of the first.

3. When the lines break in columns to the front the second will general follow those of the first..... When the march is to the flanks ; the second line will compose a separate column, or columns. When the march is to the rear ; the second line will lead in columns.

4. The distance betwixt the lines, may be in general supposed equal to the front of two regiments, and an interval.

5. Second lines are seldom composed of as many regiments as the first ; they are often divided into distinct bodies, covering separate parts of the first line.

6. Second lines will not always remain extended, they will often be formed in column of regiments, or of greater numbers, ready to be moved to any point where their assistance is necessary.

7. Whenever the first line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face to the right. The movements of the second line are free and unembarrassed, and it may turn round the manœuvring flank of the first line, and take its new position behind it, by extending itself parallel to that direction, how oblique soever it may be.

8. The central movement generally required from the second line to conform to that of the first, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of platoons, from near the centre obliquely to the front, and from that situation forming to both flanks.

9. The movements of the central columns being well understood. Those of the regiments of the wings, are similar in the two lines.

10. The officer commanding the second line, must always be properly informed of the nature of the change to to be made by the first, that he may readily determine his corresponding movements.

11. In all cases where a change of position is made on a flank or central point of the *first line*, the movement of its *corresponding* point of the second line determines the new relative situation of that second line.

Fig. 84. 16. *To find this point*, it is necessary to premise, that if a circle is described from any point A, of a

Fig. 89. first line AE, with a radius equal to the distance betwixt the two lines ; then its corresponding point *a*, in the second line will be always in the circumference of that circle, at such place as the second line becomes a tangent to the circle. Should the first line therefore make a change of position AR either on a flank or central point A ; its *corresponding* point *a*, at that time in the second line, will move so as still to preserve and halt in its relative situation *a*, 2 ; and by the movement and halt of that part, preceded by the one *d*, of *intersection*, every other part of the second line, either by following them, or by yielding from them is regulated, and directed. Betwixt the old and new situation of the corresponding point, *a*, and equidistant from each, lies the point *d*, were the old and new positions of the second line *intersect*, and which is a most material one in the movement of that line.

§ 208.....*When two Lines change Position on a central point of the first Line.*

Fig. 89. 1. A. is the point on which the change is to be made : *a*, is obviously its corresponding point in the second line whose distance in paces is known. The direction of the first line AR, being ascertained, it be-

comes immediately necessary to mark the *corresponding* point $a, 2$, in the second line, and also the point of *intersection* d , that the prolongation of that line may be also determined. From the point A , therefore and in a direction perpendicular to the new line, a person accurately paces the known distance between the two lines, and halts at $a, 2$; and from thence observes by his eye, the perpendicular to the line which he has just paced, and also its intersection with the second line, which gives the platoon or point d , together with the direction of the new second line. The point $a, 2$, and d , being thus fixed, the line proceed to make their movement, viz. the first line by the echelon march (§ 195;) the second line B breaks inward to the platoon d ; that platoon moves its pivot flank along the new line followed by all those betwixt it, and a , till a , arrives at the point $a, 2$. The other platoons and regiments of the second line move relatively to the part a, d , the whole performing the precise operation already detailed in the change of position of the line on a moveable central point. § 185.

2. But in order to accelerate the movement of the second line in *central* changes: a platoon or flank point o , as much beyond a , as a is removed from d , may be taken; this point is evidently the one, which will rest at the point of intersection d , when a , is arrived and halted at $a, 2$. As soon therefore as the points o, d , are ascertained and without waiting for the progressive movement of this centre part of the line, every thing that is in rear of o , may march and form in the new position, regarding $o, 2$, as its leading flank point, and every thing that fronts to d , regarding $d, 2$, as its leading flank point, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. § 186.

Fig. 89.

3. In order the better to ascertain the parallel direction of the new second line, 2 persons separated from each other about 100 paces, may set out from different points of the new first line, and accurately

Fig. 89.

pace the known distance of the second; when they halt, the line of their prolongation gives the new direction, and also the intersection of the second lines.—Or if the first line points on any very distant object the second line from the point *a*, 2, will be readily judged to pass a very little behind that object.

§ 209.....*When two Lines change Position forward, on a flank of the first Line.*

Fig. 90.

The direction of the first line being ascertained, that line will march into it by the echellon march, § 195. In the mean time the corresponding flank point *a*, 2, in the new second line having been taken, and also the point *d*, in the intersection of the two lines; these points serve as the base of formation. The second line will break into open column facing to the platoon *d*, of intersection; the whole will proceed as in § 185, that platoon marching along the new line till *a*, arrives at *a*, 2: and when the other regiments which have moved forward are anew arranged in open column, they wheel up into line.

§ 210.....*When two Lines change position backward, on a flank of the first Line.*

Fig. 91.

The direction of the first line being ascertained, that line will march into it, by the echellon movement to the rear, § 195. The corresponding points *a*, 2, and *d*, in the new second line serving as a base of formation, having been ascertained as well as the point *o*, that line breaks into open column facing to the point of intersection: The part of the line between *a*, and *o*, marches on to the point of intersection, and from thence prolongs the new lines: The part of the

line behind *a*, regarding *d*, as its leading flank point of formation, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. § 186.

§ 211.....*When two formed Lines wheel into open Column, march to a Flank, change Direction, and take up a new Position.*

1. *If the new position is a retired one.....* Both lines Fig. 92, wheel into open column (suppose the left in front) and moves on—C. is a point where the head of the first line is to change its direction into that of C. D. by wheeling on its pivot flank: The leader of the 2d line being apprized of this point sends forward to ascertain his corresponding point *c*, and his parallel direction *c, d*; these two points become the base of formation for the second line, and *d*, is in the intersection of the old and new lines. Both columns proceed in their first direction, and when the first line arrives at C, the head wheels on its pivot into the direction C, D, followed by the rest of its column; but the second line then changing its head on the point *c*, moves towards it, there to enter its corresponding direction.—The first line halts, and such parts of it as are in the new direction remain so: while the rear of the column, by the movement of § 182, gains the new direction, and by wheeling up forms in line; or, if the ground permits, it enters the new line by the echelon march of § 158, each division first counter-marching by files, and then facing about, so that its rear rank may lead.

2. When the first line halts, if the head division of the second line *has not entered* the new direction, it still moves on to its point of entry *c*, prolongs the line till it arrives behind its corresponding point A, 2, of the first line, it then halts, and all such others as have

arrived in the new direction, while the rear of the column, which since the halt of the first line has been gradually (by obliquing) and regularly throwing itself to the left, places itself in open column on the new direction, and wheels up into line.

3. When the first line halts, if the head of the second *has entered* the direction, it moves on till it arrives behind its corresponding point of the first one, and the rear of the column obliquates to avoid interfering with, and to make place for the forming of the first line. When the head halts, such part of the column as is not in the new direction gains it by the movement of § 182.

4. If the head of the first line when it arrives at E, *waits* till the 2d line arrives at the corresponding point *c*, they will then proceed equally. Or, the march of the second line may begin proportionally sooner than that of the first.

Fig. 93. 5. *If the new position is an advanced one.....* The first line changes its direction at C, by a wheel to the reverse hand into C, D, marches on till the head is halted; such part of the column as is not in the new line enters it, by the divisions of the column wheeling back into echelon, and then marching up successively into line. The second line which has ascertained its corresponding points *c*, *d*, moves on, enters the new direction at *d*, by a wheel to its reverse hand, and prolongs the line till it arrives at its flank point, when the whole halt, and the regiments of such part of the column as are not then in the new direction gain it by the movements of § 182.

6. The second line must take care not to pass its point *d*, but after arriving at it must wait till the head of the first line, which has more ground to go over, arrives equal with it in the new line, it will then move on.

OF THE COLUMN OF ROUTE.

1. The column of route formed by divisions of the regiments is the foundation of all great distant movements, and even of evolutions and manœuvres. It is in that order that the regiment should at any time be permitted to move; that the columns of an army should perform their marches; that an enemy should be approached; and that safety can be insured to the troops in their transitions from one point to another. All marches are therefore made in column of divisions of the line, and never on a less front than six files where the formation is three deep, or four files where it is two deep, nor does any advantage arise from such column, if it is an open column, exceeding sixteen or eighteen file in front, where a considerable space is to be gone over.

By companies or other divisions.

2. At no time whatever ought a column of manœuvre or of route to occupy a greater extent of ground in marching than what is equal to its front when in order of battle; no situation can require it as an advantage. Therefore, the marching of great bodies in file, where improper extension is unavoidable, must be looked upon as an unmilitary practice, and only to be had recourse to when unavoidably necessary. Where woods, inclosures, and bad or narrow routes absolutely require a march in file, there is no remedy for the delay in forming, and man may be obliged to come up after man; but these circumstances, which should be regarded as exceptions from the primary and desired order of march on a greater front, should tend the more to enforce the great principle of preventing improper distances, and of getting out of so weak a situation as soon as the nature of the ground will allow of the front of the march being increased.

Disadvantages of file marching.

Rate and
circum-
stances of
march.

3. In common route marching, the regiment or more considerable column may be carried on at a natural pace of about 75 steps in a minute, or near two miles and a half in an hour: The attention of the soldier is allowed to be relaxed, he moves without the restraint of cadence of step, or carried arms; rear ranks are opened to one or two paces: files are loosened but never confounded; in no situation is the ordered distance between divisions ever to be increased, and the proper flank officers and under officers remain answerable for them.

Atten-
tions in
march.

4. If the column is halted, the whole must be put in march at the same time. The movement of the head divisions must be steady and equal; the descending of heights must not be hurried, that the part of the column ascending may properly keep up. Alterations occasioned by the windings of the route are executed without losing distance. Soldiers are not to break to avoid mud or small spots of water. The pivots must trace out such a path for themselves as will best avoid small obstructions, and the men of the divisions will open from, and not press upon their pivots. When platoon officers are permitted to be mounted, each will remain on the flank of his division watching over its exactness, and that the proper distance of march is kept by the flank pivot under officer appointed to preserve it.

5. Where the arrival of a column at a given point is to be perfectly punctual, in that case the distance being known, the head must move at an equal cadenced step, and the rear must conform: and a person, expressly appointed, will at the head of the column, take such step as the nature of the route shall permit the column to comply with.

6. Nothing so much fatigues troops in a considerable column, and is more to be avoided than an inequality of march. One great reason is, that the rear of the column frequently and unnecessarily deviates from

the line which its head traces out ; and in endeavouring to regain that line, and their first distances, the divisions must of course run or stop, and again take up their march. It is unnecessary to attempt the same scrupulous observances in common route marching, as when going to enter into the alignment ; but even a general attention to this circumstance will in that case prevent unnecessary winding in the march, which tends to prolong it, and to harass the soldier.

7. When the probable required formation of the line will be to a flank, then the column of march is an open one, and, except the cannon, no impediment or circumstance whatever must be allowed betwixt the divisions or in the intervals of regiments. When cannon can possibly move on the flank of the regiment they ought, and mounted officers or regiment horses must not be permitted betwixt the divisions. If the probable formation may be to the front, then distances are more closed up, and bat-horses, &c. may be allowed betwixt the brigades of a column, but not betwixt the regiments of a brigade.

8. It is always time well employed to halt the head of a considerable column, and enlarge an opening, or repair a bad step in the road, rather than to diminish the front, or lengthen out the line of march. No individual is to presume to march on a less front than what the leader of the column directs, and all doublings must therefore come from the head only. The preservation of the original front of march, on all occasions, is a point of the highest consequence, and it is a most meritorious service in an officer to prevent all unnecessary doublings, or to correct them as soon as made ; no advantage can arise from them, and therefore each commanding officer, when he arrives near the cause, should be assured that it is necessary before he permits his regiment so to double : On all occasions he should continue his march on the greatest

front, that, without crowding, the road or overtures will allow, although the regiment or division before him may be marching on a narrower front.

Overtures
of march.

9. All openings made for the march of a column should be sufficient for the greatest front on which it is to march, they should all be of the same width, otherwise each smaller one becomes a defile.

Avoiding
of difficul-
ties in
the march.

10. At all points of increasing or diminishing the front of the march, an intelligent officer, per regiment or brigade, should be stationed to see that it is performed with celerity; and the commandant of a considerable column should have constant reports and inspections made that the column is moving with proper regularity; he should have officers in advance to apprise him of difficulties to be avoided, or obstacles to be passed, and should himself apply every proper means to obviate such as may occur in the march. (And at no time are such helps more necessary than when regiments are acting in line on broken ground, and when their movements are combined with those of others.) When the column arrives near its object of formation or manœuvre, the strictest attention of officers and men is to be resumed, and each individual is to be at his post.

11. The great principle on all occasions of diminishing or increasing the front of the column in march is, that such part as doubles or forms up shall slacken or quicken its pace, as is necessary to conform to the part which has no such operation to perform, but which continues its uniform march, without the least alteration, as if no such process was going on: and if this is observed, distances can never be lost, or the column lengthened out.—Unless the unremitting attention and intelligence of officers commanding regiments and their divisions are given to this object, disorder and constant stops and runs take place in the column: the soldier is improperly and unnecessarily

harrassed : disease soon gains ground in a corps thus ill conducted, which is not to be depended on in any combined arrangement, is unequal to any effort when its exertion may be required, and is soon ruined from a neglect of the first and most important of military duties.

12. The most important exercise that troops can attend to is the march in column of route. No calculation can be made on columns which do not move with an ascertained regularity, and great fatigue arises to the soldier : A general cannot depend on execution, and therefore can make no combination of time or distance in the arrival of columns at their several points : In many situations an improper extended column will be liable to be beat in detail, and before it can be formed. Troops that are seldom assembled for the manœuvres of war can hardly feel the necessity of the modes in which a considerable body of infantry must march and move.

Importance of exactness in the march.

13. The distance of columns from each other, during a march, depends on the circumstances of ground, and the object of that march, with regard to future formations. The more columns in which a considerable corps marches, the less extent in depth will it take up, the less frequent will be its halts, and the more speedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Columns and their distances.

14. On the combinations of march, and on their execution by the component parts of the body, does the success of every military operation or enterprize depend. To fulfil the intentions of the chief every concurrent exertion of the subordinate officer is *required*, and the best calculated dispositions founded on local knowledge, must fail if there is a want of that punctuality of execution which every general must trust to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

Combinations of march.

Nature of
marches.

15. The composition of the columns of an army must always depend on the nature of the country and objects of the movement. Marches made *parallel* to the front of the enemy will generally be performed by the lines on which the army is encamped, each marching by its flank, and occupying when in march the same extent of ground as when formed in line. Marches made *perpendicular* to the front of the enemy, either advancing or retiring, will be covered by strong van or rear guards. The columns will be formed of considerable divisions of the army, each generally composed both of cavalry and infantry; they will move at half or quarter distance, and the nature of the country will determine which arm precedes.

General
objects in
marches
to the
front.

16. During a march to the *front*, the separation of the heads of the columns must unavoidably be considerable; but, when they approach the enemy, they must be so regulated and directed as to be able to occupy the intermediate spaces, if required to form in line. Some one column must determine the relative situation of the others, and divisions must be more closed up than in a march to a flank, and in proportion as they draw near to the enemy must exactness and attention increase.

General
objects in
marches
to the
rear.

17. The safety of marches to the *rear* must depend on particular dispositions on strong covering rear guards, and on the judicious choice of such posts as will check the pursuit of the enemy.

All the foregoing OPERATIONS in Line, Column, or Echellon, should be applied according to circumstances.....As *Counter-movements of Defence*.....*Movements of previous Formation*.....*Movements of Attack*.....as well as *Movements of Retreat*.

The mixed considerations, and support of CAVALRY, INFANTRY, and ARTILLERY, require a very intricate discussion.

Fig. 1.

The dotted Line & Arrows express
the direction of the Movement.

The round Dots . express the position
of Leaders of Divisions.

The Square Dots ■ express points
of March or Formation.

The Letters AB, &c. denote different
Movements in the same Figure.

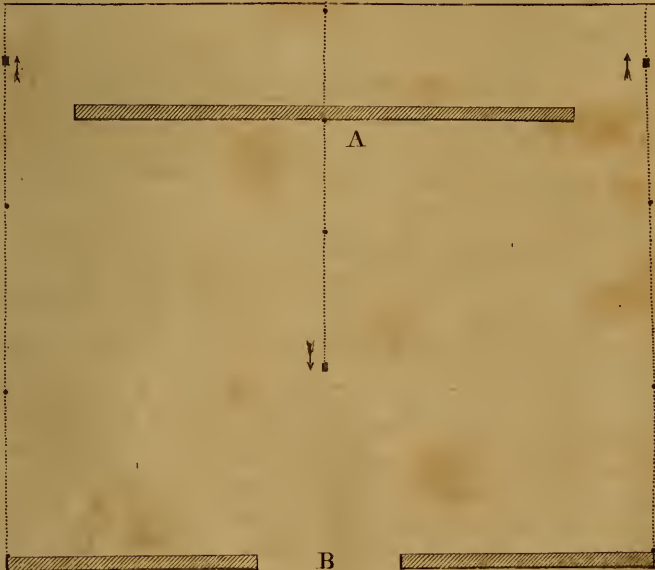
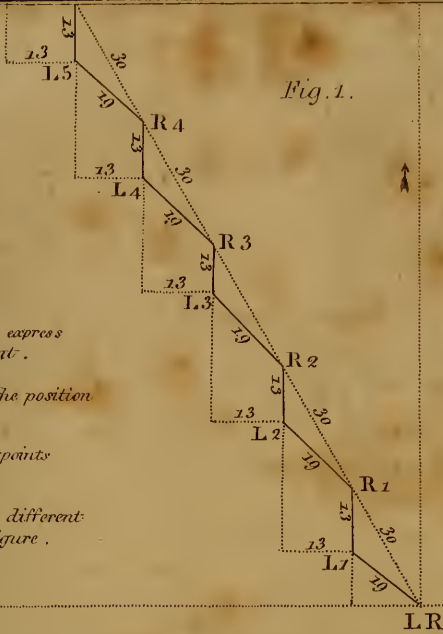


Fig. 2.

Fig. 3.

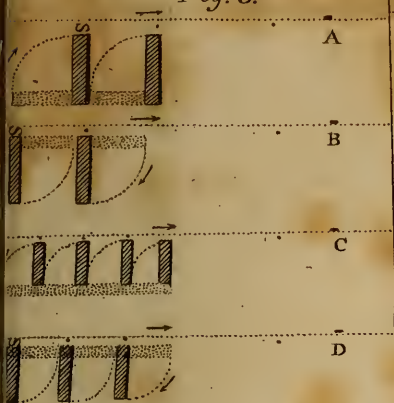
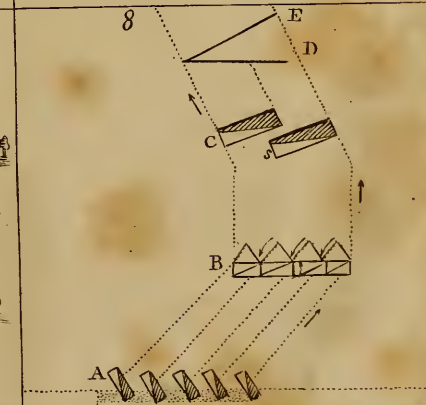
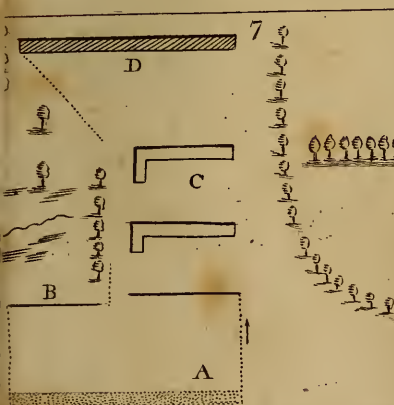
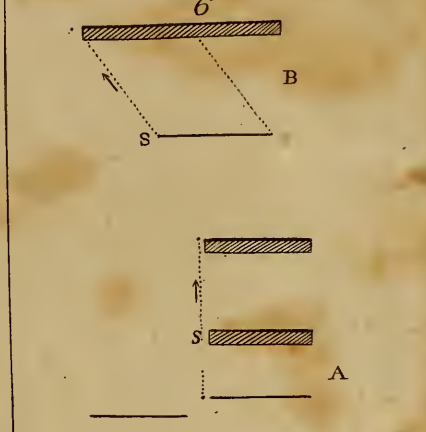
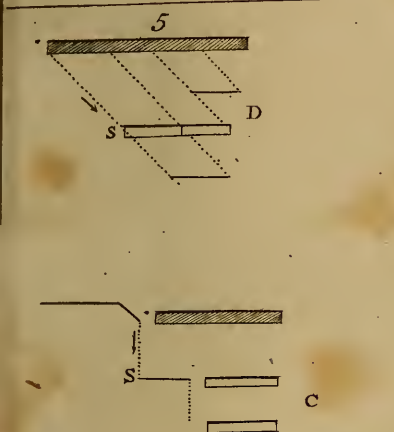
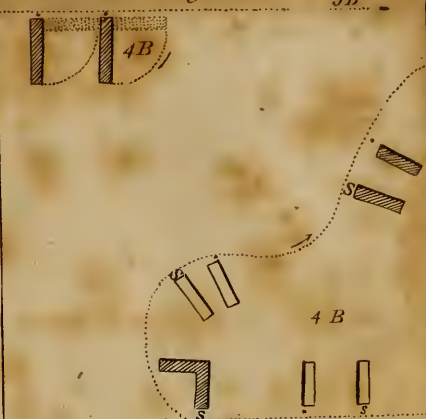
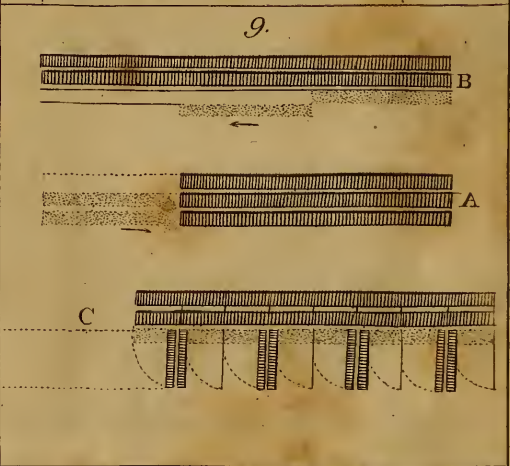
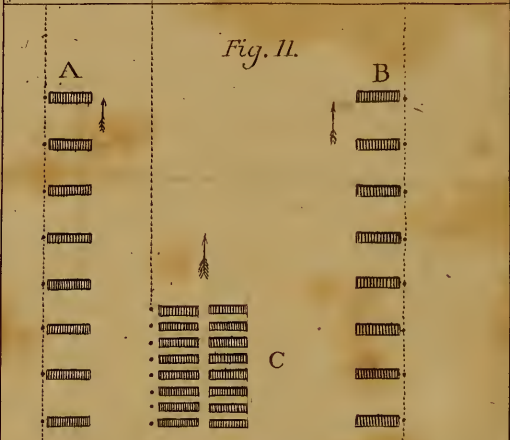
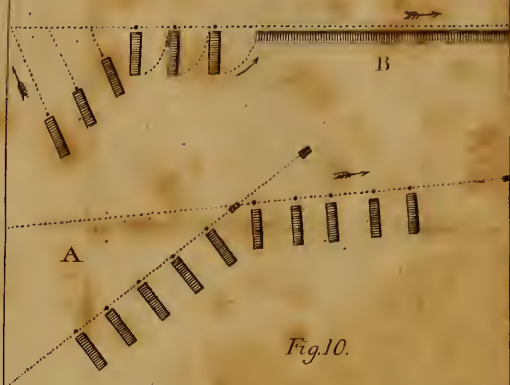
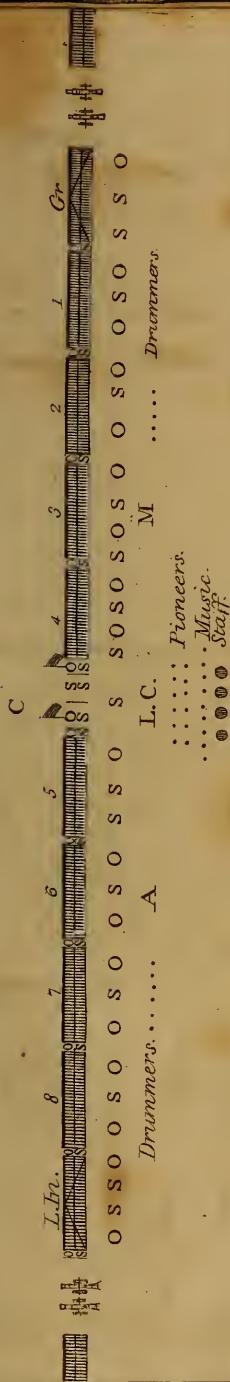


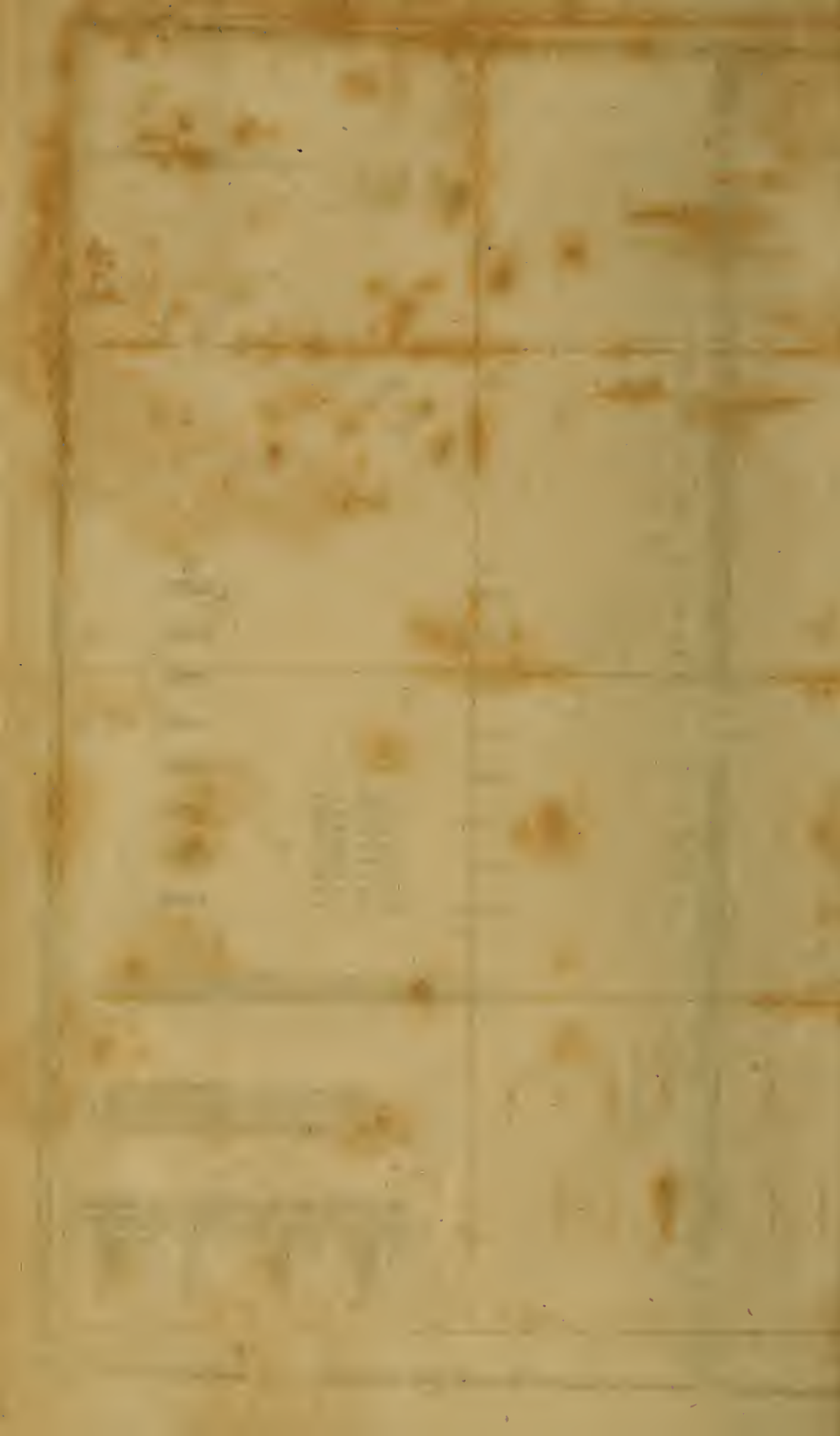
Fig. 4.





Regiment formed in close Order:

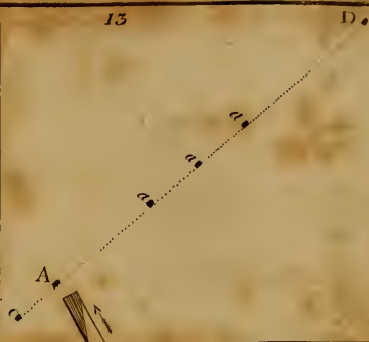




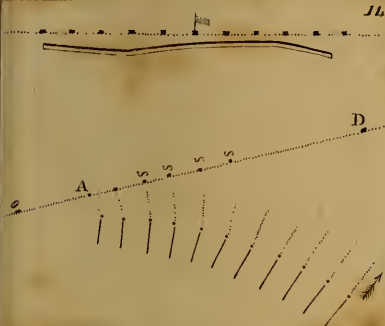
12



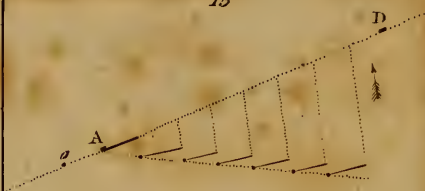
13



14



15



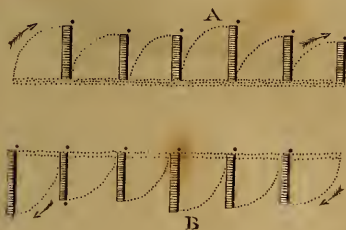
16



17



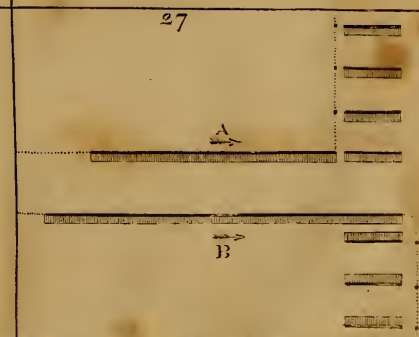
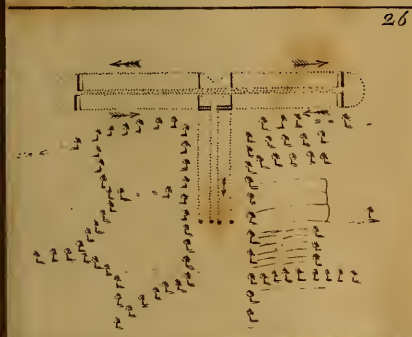
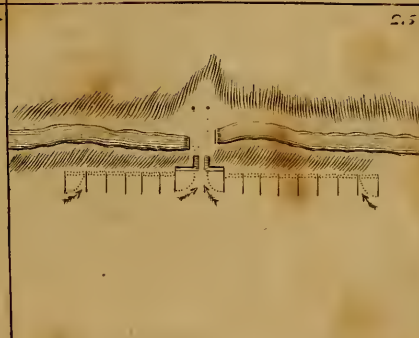
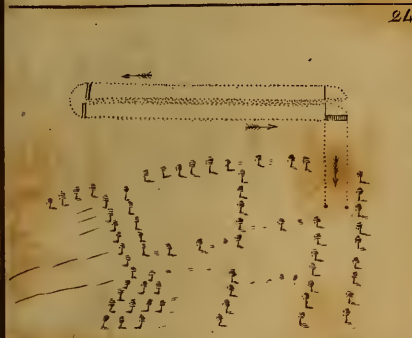
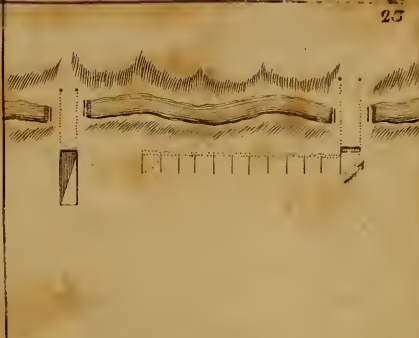
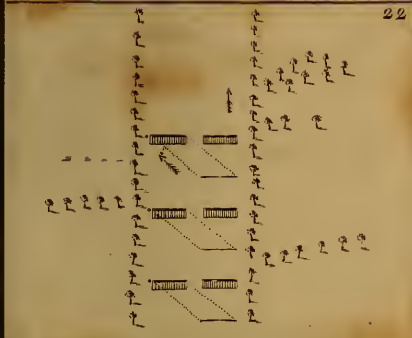
18



19

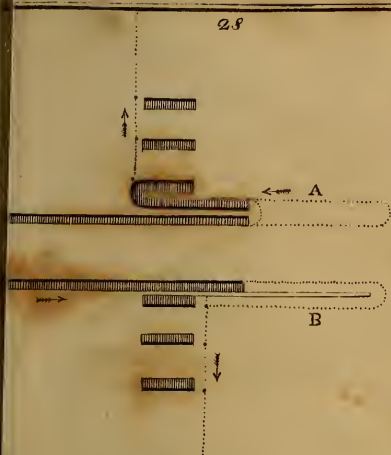




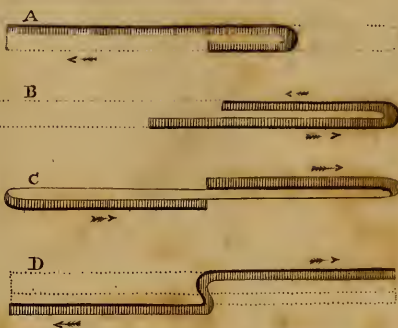




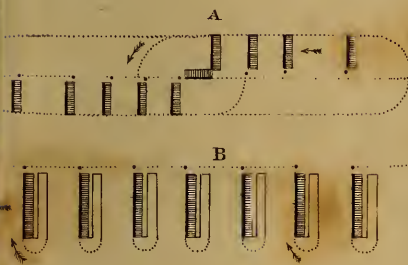
28



29

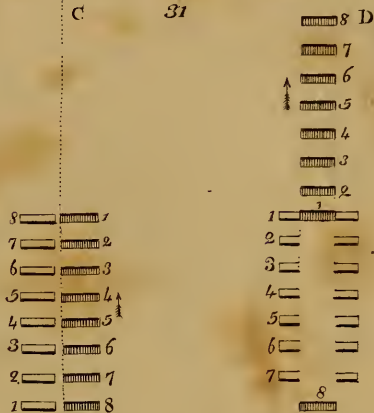


30

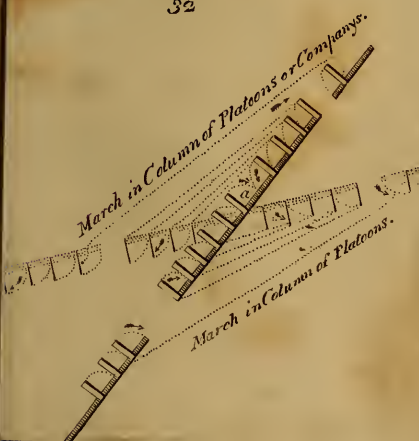


C

31



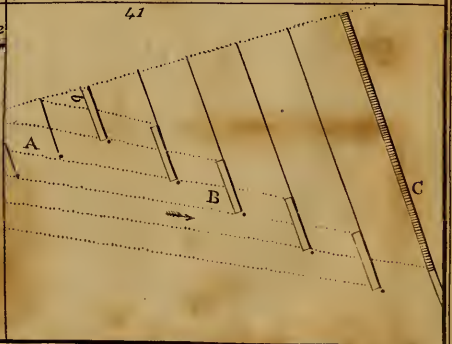
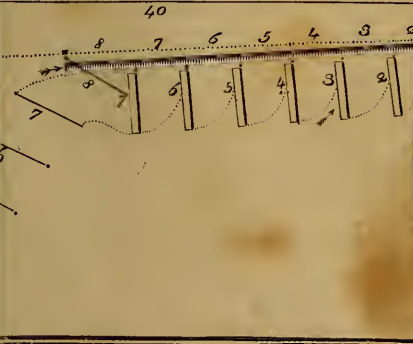
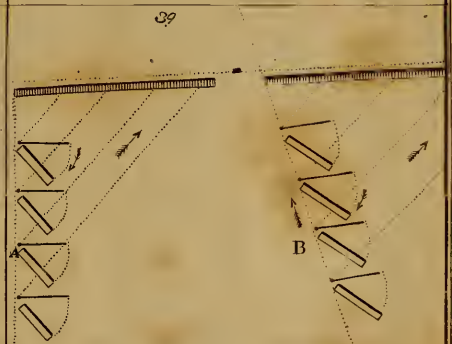
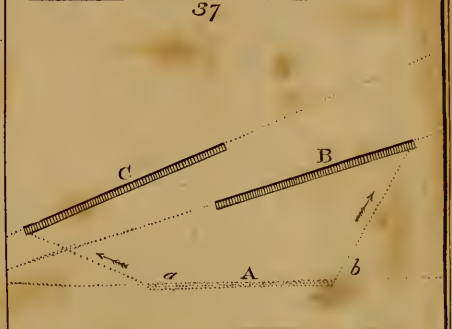
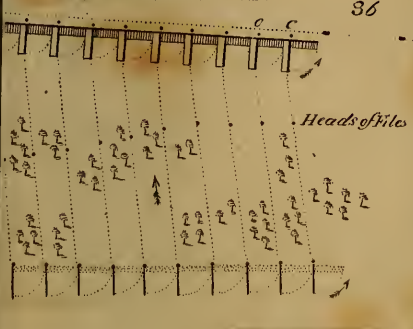
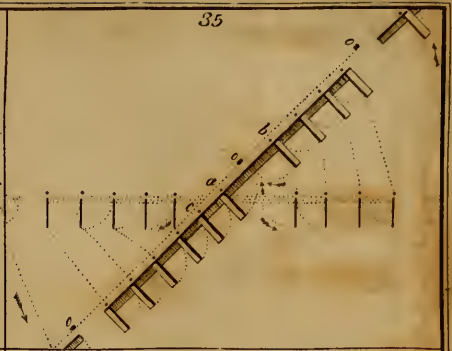
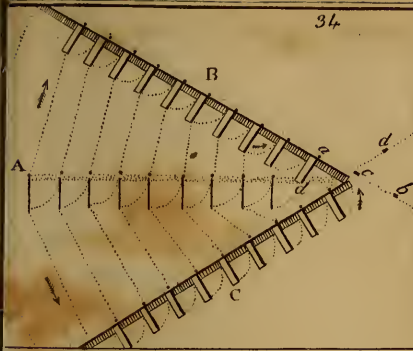
32



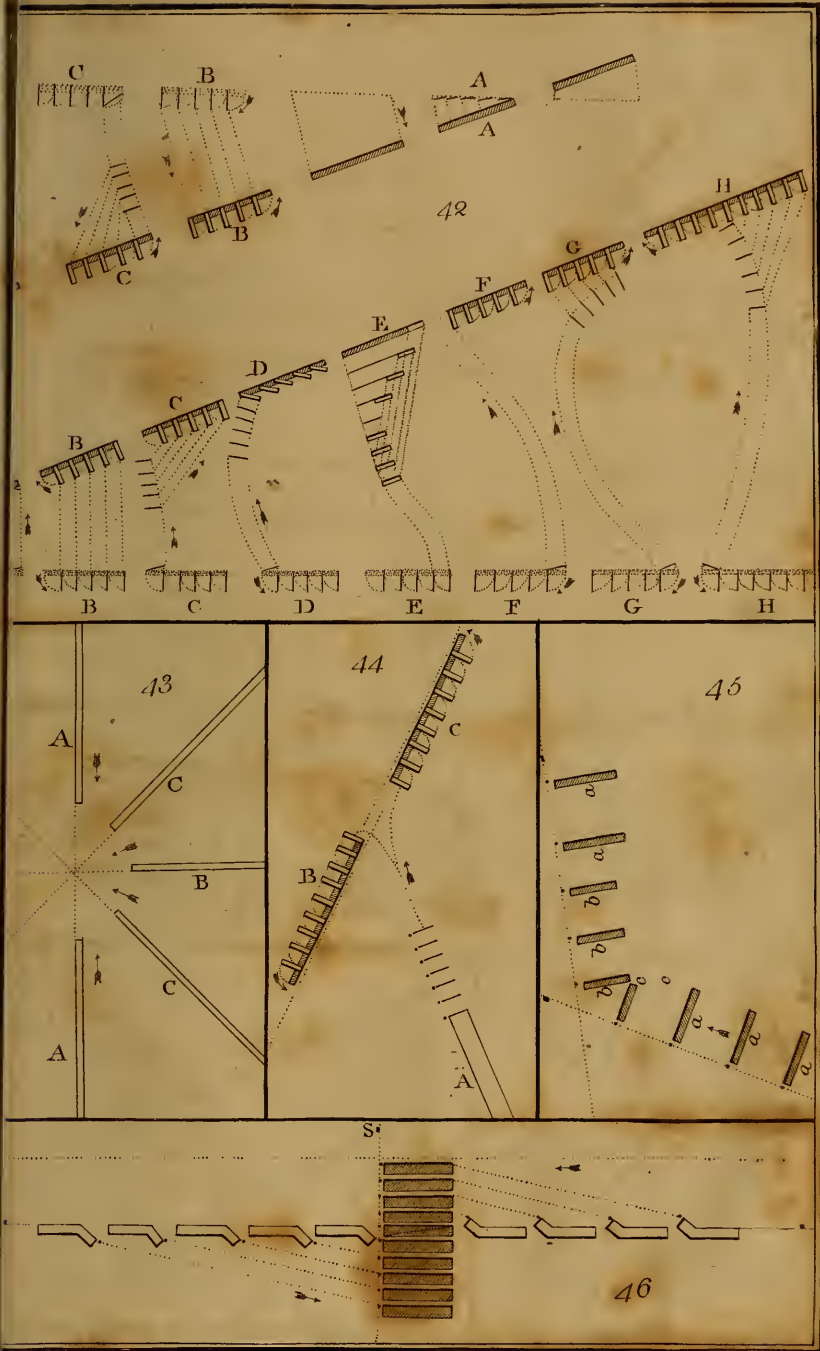
33



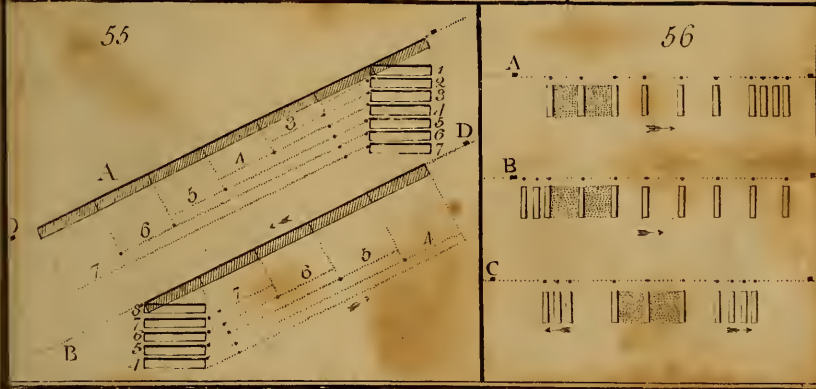
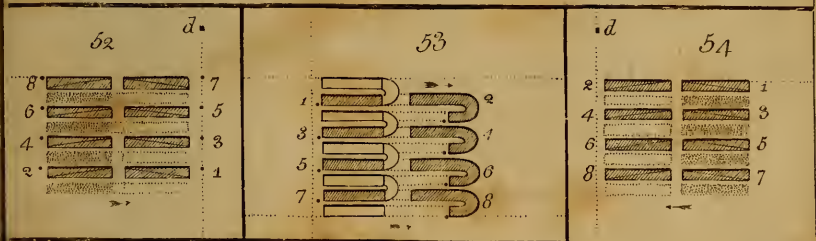
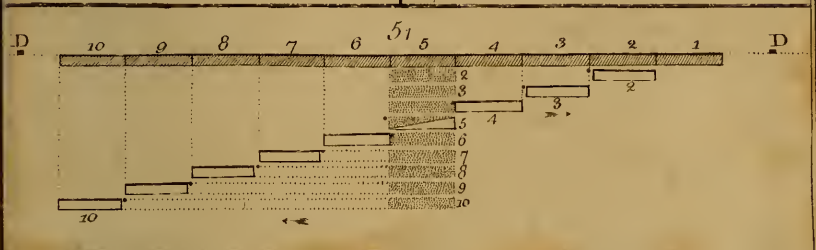
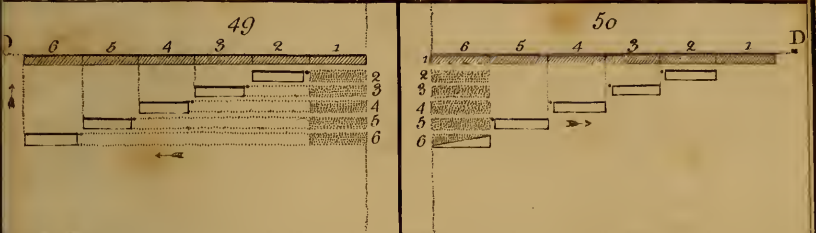
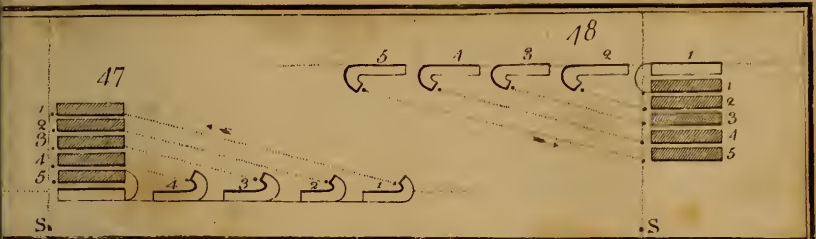






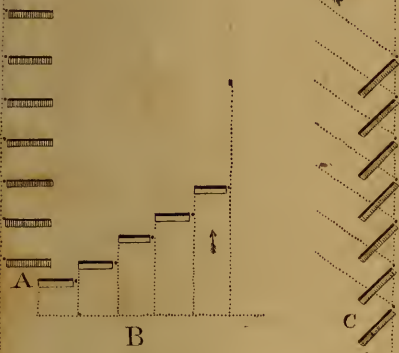




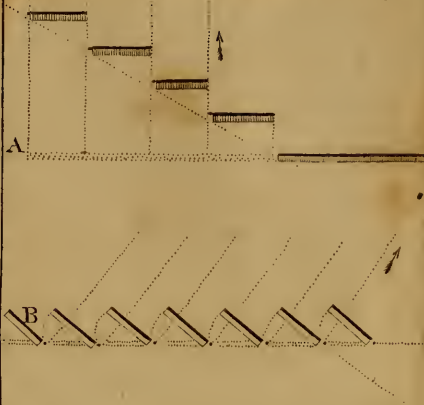




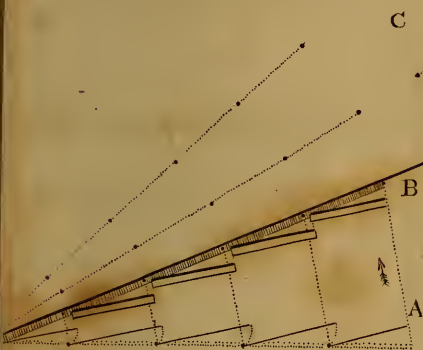
57



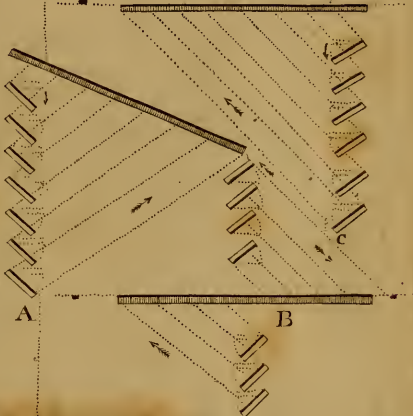
58



59



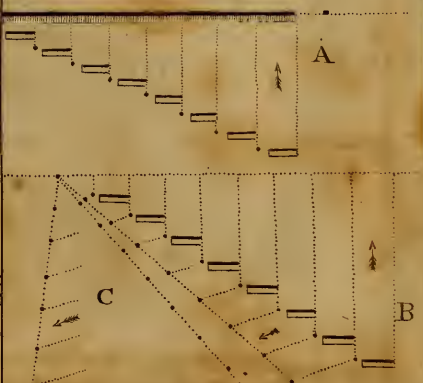
60



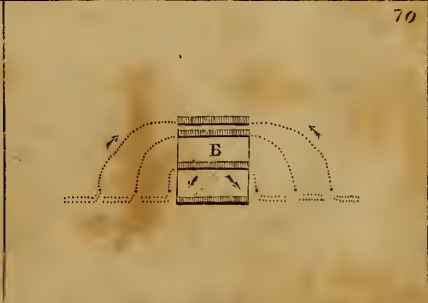
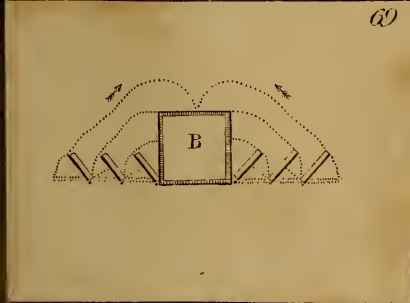
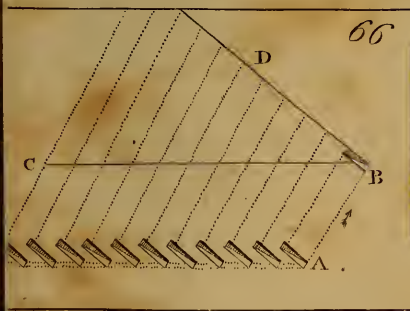
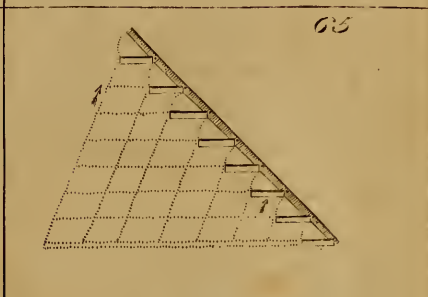
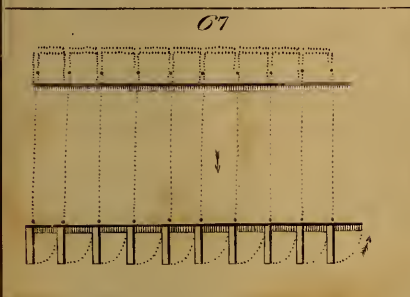
61



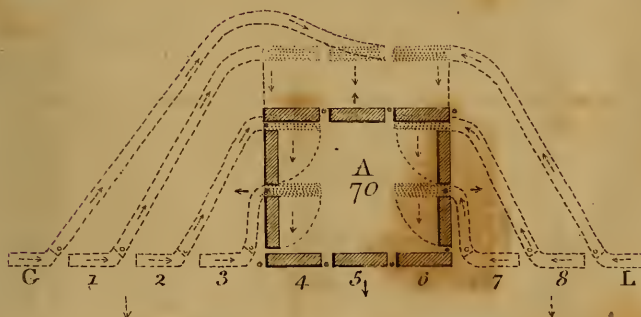
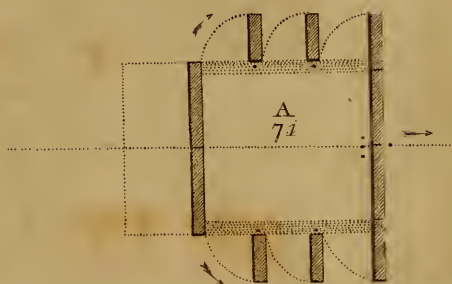
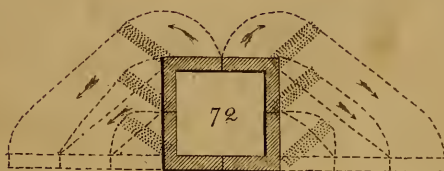
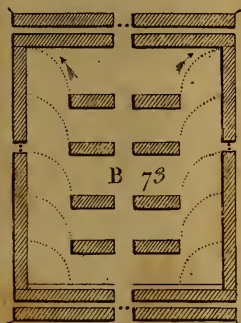
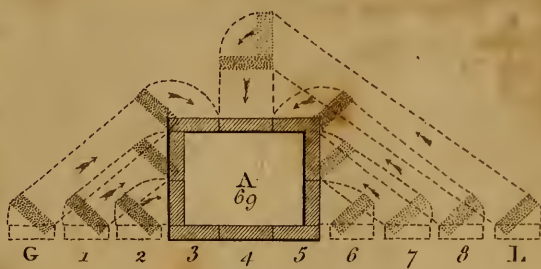
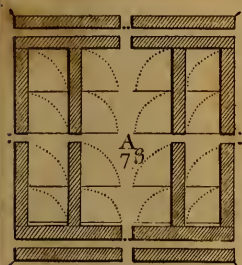
62







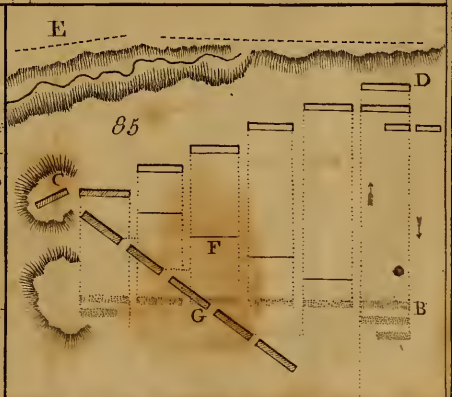
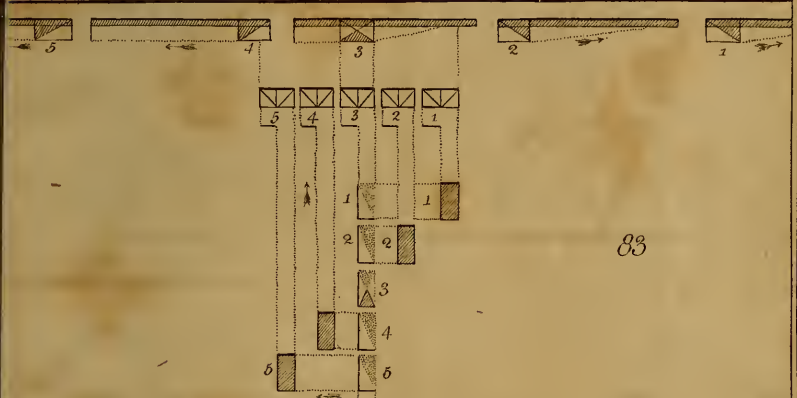
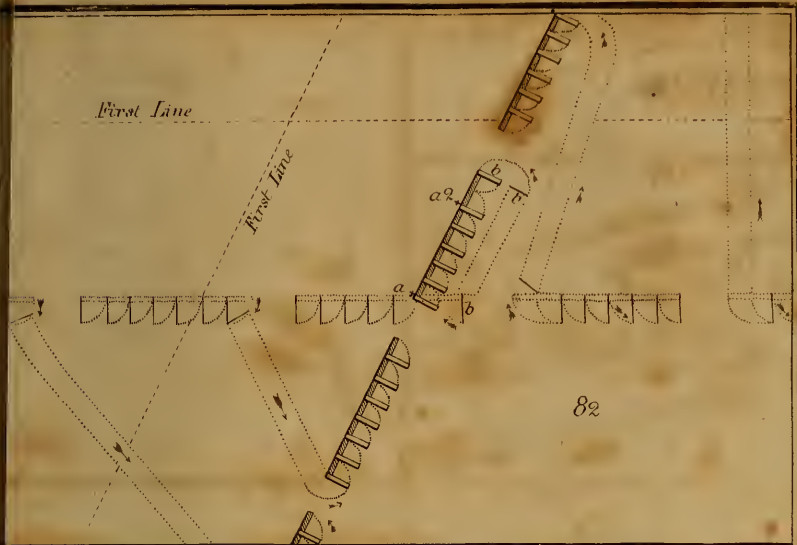




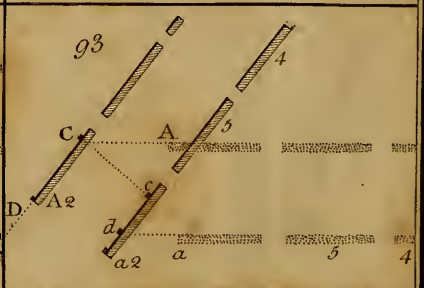
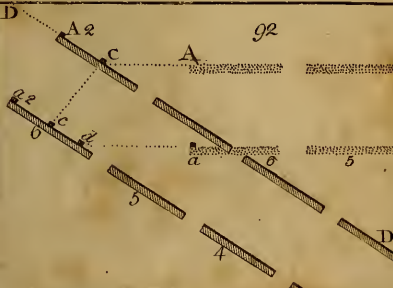
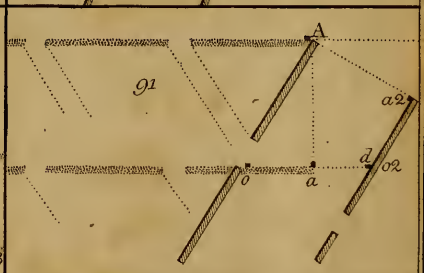
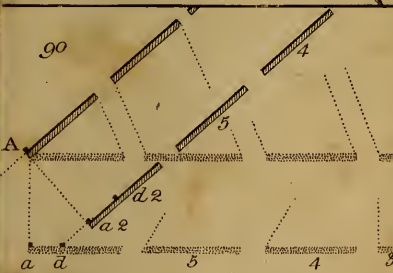
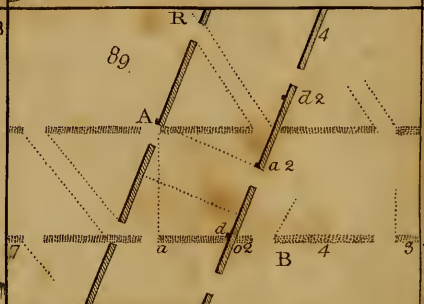
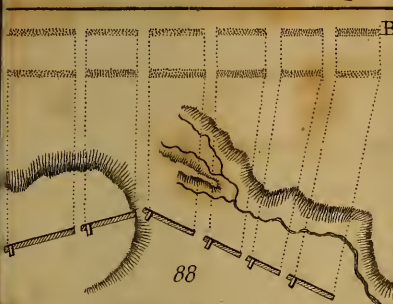
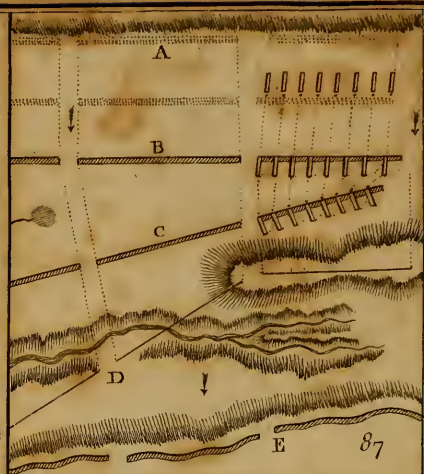
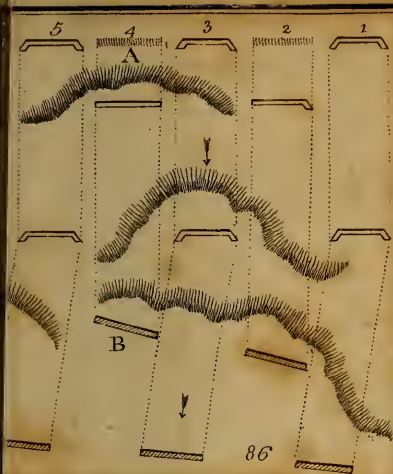






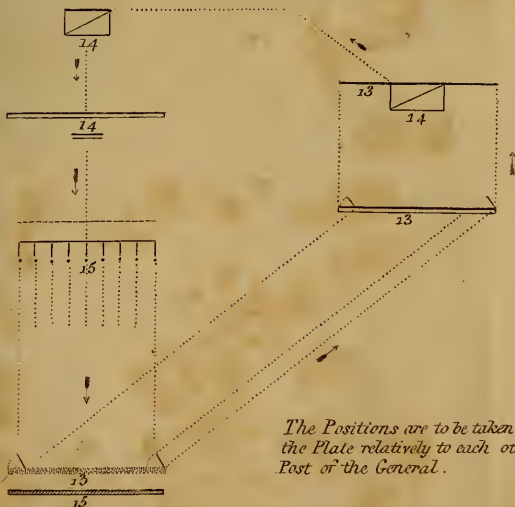
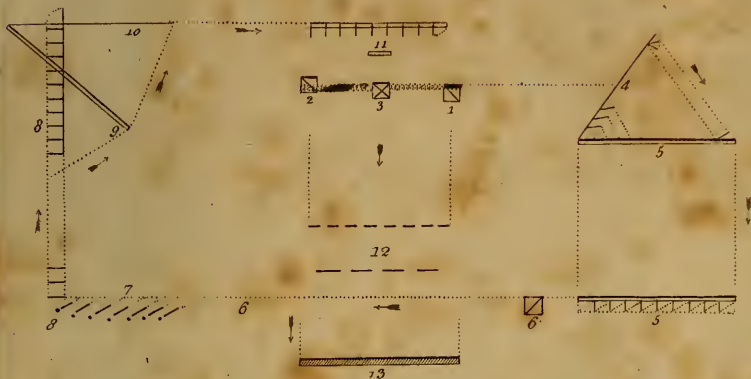








Inspection or Review



The Positions are to be taken as marked in the Plate relatively to each other and to the Post of the General.

The Figures denote the numbers or the Movements as expressed in the Explanation.



Recruiting Officers Return of Inlistment.

[illegible]

- Muster Roll of a Company.

Mens' Names.	Rank.	Date of Inlistment.	Present.	Remarks.	RECAPITULATION.						
						Serjeants.	Corp.	Music.	Privates.	Total.	Remarks.
					Present and fit for duty.						
					Deceased.						
					Sick.						
					Confined.						
					Discharged.						

Morning Report of a Company.

	Capt.	Lieut.	Ensign.	Serj.	Corp.	Music.	Privates.	Remarks.
Present and fit for duty,								
On duty,								
On Fatigue,								
Absent without leave,								
Absent by permission,								
Sick,								
Confined,								

Inspection Return, of Arms, Accoutrements, and Clothing.

Numbers.	Mens' Names.
	Muskets.
	Ramrods.
	Bayonets
	Scabbards.
	Belts.
	Boxes.
	Caps.
	Stocks.
	W. Pant.
	L. Pant.
	Shirts.
	Shoes.
	Blankets.
	Knapsacks
	Socks.
	Garters.
	Uniform C
	Fa. suits.
	Remarks.

Morning Report of the Officer of the Guard.

No.	Prisoners' Names.	Regiment.	Company.	Confined by	Where confined.	Crimes	Remarks.



